

*Министерство науки и высшего образования
Российской Федерации
АМУРСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ*

Т. А. Гудкина, А.А. Литвинская, Е. П. Нестерова, М. А. Пирогова

Reader's Choice

**учебное пособие
по домашнему чтению**

Благовещенск

2022

ББК 81.2 Англ – 923

Р 31

*Печатается по решению
редакционно-издательского совета
филологического факультета
Амурского государственного
университета*

Reader's Choice: учебное пособие по развитию навыков пересказа художественных текстов на английском языке/ Т. А. Гудкина, А. А. Литвинская, Е. П. Нестерова, М. А. Пирогова, - Благовещенск: Амурский гос. ун-т, 2022. – 258 с.

Пособие предназначено для студентов направления подготовки 44.03.05 – Педагогическое образование (с двумя профилями подготовки), а также студентов других направлений, языковых вузов и факультетов иностранных языков, изучающих английский язык как профессиональную дисциплину.

Рецензенты: А. В. Юнг, зав. кафедрой иностранных языков Санкт-Петербургского Технологического института (технического университета), канд. филол. наук, доцент

М. В. Снитко, доцент кафедры перевода и межкультурной коммуникации Амурского государственного университета, канд. филол. наук, доцент

©Амурский государственный университет, 2022
© Кафедра иностранных языков

INTRODUCTION

Reader's Choice is a reading textbook for students of English as a foreign language. Proficient reading requires the coordination of a number of skills and depends on the reader's ability to select the proper strategies to solve each reading problem. This book is designed to provide students with information processing tasks in the context of a wide range of readings. Stories representing a variety of topics and styles can be read both for enjoyment and analysis. The exercises in *Reader's Choice* provide practice in using both text-based knowledge and writing skills. They enable teachers to introduce readings in terms of vocabulary, grammar and ideas.

A typical unit presents a story with related commentaries and exercises which are grouped into three sections. The commentaries are referred to as **Focus on Vocabulary**, **Focus on Phrasal Verbs** and **Focus on Idioms** which are followed by respective practice exercises aimed at improving the student's command of vocabulary, idioms and phrasal verbs. The meanings of new words in the sections are provided through definitions, explanations, synonyms and examples that enable students to see how the words function in other situations or contexts and deepen their knowledge of the vocabulary. Students strengthen their understanding of a word and/or phrase by applying it/them three times in three different types of exercises. Revision exercises that follow allow for more reinforcement.

Grammar exercises provide intensive work on various grammatical structures. They can serve both as a means for practicing structures and as a basis for developing students' compositional skills.

The exercises in the final section with the focus on critical reading give students practice in understanding how the arrangement of the ideas affects the overall meaning of the story. Students are required not only to find the main idea of the story, but also answer questions about specific details in the passage and to draw conclusions based on its understanding. All pre-reading and post-reading exercises and questions contained in every unit suggest a number of opportunities for follow up discussions and can serve as a springboard for the students' writing.

The authors hope you will enjoy working with *Reader's Choice* and using the exercises and activities in it. They have confidence that this textbook will be interesting, innovative and useful for both teachers and students.

UNIT I

THE KLAUSNERS

Leonard Tushnet

PART 1

Everybody has one at some time or other. A Klausner, I mean. Only it should be spelled with a small *k*, like the *r* in robots. Not that klausners are robots, not at all. Klausners are independent thinkers, very independent, and far from submissive. That's what makes them klausners. They're domineering and aggressive in a politely offensive manner, one that gets under your skin and gives rise too late to cab-wit. They mean you no harm; rather, they mean you well. They point out your errors and try to help you overcome them. They go out of their way to do you good, whether or not you want to be the beneficiary of their philanthropy. They're constantly doing you favors that leave you feeling like a fool.

I didn't realize how pernicious klausners could be until after we moved to Great Neck and the family was exposed to their influence. Oh, in the city there were some but we instinctively avoided them, easy to do in the security of our own segment of the apartment-beehive. But in the suburbs, that's a different matter. There's more neighborliness, which means more personal unavoidable contact. For example, if you run out of gas for your power mower, the man next door will lend you a gallon out of his reserve. You thank him and reciprocate when he runs out of gas. Unless he's a klausner. Klausners never run out of gas. They're prepared for every contingency. They have big candles in the house, not ornamental ones, when the power fails. They see your darkened windows and send over a dozen candles without your asking for them. Of course, along with the candles comes advice. "Always keep a supply on hand. You never know when you'll need them. They're cheap. It's not a great expense."

My own klausners swam slowly into my ken. I'm busy all day in the city, so at the outset I heard about the Klausners only by dinner-table allusions. My wife

mentioned Mrs. Klausner. My oldest son spoke about Gerald Klausner. My daughter (fourteen) told me about Emily Klausner, and Michael (seven) about Harvey. They told jokes and stories about the Klausners and it took a little while before I recognized that underneath the humor lay hostility and fear caused by my family's increasing sense of inferiority. Michael said, "Harvey's the first in the reading group." Berenice said, "Emily has a vinyl miniskirt." Joseph said, "Gerald made the football team." My wife, Estelle, said, "Mrs. Klausner has an automatic pineapple corer. That last remark, thrown out in a discussion of what make of dishwasher we were going to buy, was so irrelevant that I laughed. "What has that to do with" the price of eggs? You also have lots of gadgets. Like a garlic press you never use and an egg slicer."

Estelle laughed, too. "I just happened to think of it. That woman has every imaginable kitchen tool made and a few she thought up herself. By the way, we're invited to a party she's giving in two weeks. Just neighbors. The Wiglers will be there, and the Silvermans. You know them." After she passed the asparagus, she added. "I think it would be nice if you wore a turtle-neck." I looked at her in amazement.

"What for? Isn't a clean white shirt good enough? Who are these Klausners, anyway?"

"They live at the end of the block," she answered. "The big red brick house with the curving driveway. I met her in the supermarket. She's very pleasant."

I looked forward to meeting the Klausners. It seemed to me that discussions about them took up more, and more time as the days went on. I was amused by the interest they aroused in my family. The Klausners knew everything: where a knitting mill had a discount outlet, how to flatter the art teacher into making high school election posters, when to develop variations on the watusi and the frug, why dinosaurs became extinct.

The only one of the Klausners I had met before the party was Harvey Klausner, who had become Michael's best friend, or at least his constant companion. Harvey was a big boy, a little too fat in the behind and with the clumsy gait that goes with excess avoirdupois in that area. But he was a whole head taller than Michael and had apple-red cheeks, curly chestnut hair, and bright blue eyes that made him look like the models in the Sunday magazine advertisements for boys' clothes. He was polite

and never in the way; he went home well before our dinner hour and never came too early on Saturday mornings. The only problem we had with him was my own son. Often during his visits Michael would lose his temper and fling something at Harvey, and always after Harvey left Michael would misbehave would have to be punished. Michael liked to ride his bike; he had just learned how to dispense with the training wheels. Harvey had been riding for more than a year and he kept showing Michael how to make sharp turns, how to carry a package in one hand and steer with the other, and how to go up and down curbs without falling off. On rainy days Michael played in the den with him, checkers or casino, at both of which Harvey was proficient. Michael's moods got worse and worse after Harvey Became his friend, so that finally I had to give the warning, "Either you control yourself or I'll forbid Harvey to come here anymore." Michael burst into tears. Harvey had for him the fascination a snake has for a chicken. He wouldn't forgo the masochistic pleasure of being with him.

My ultimatum couldn't be carried out.

PART 2

The evening of the party Estelle wore a dress I hadn't seen before: a simple frock with an embroidered jacket. She looked very well in it.

"You look lovely," I said, kissing her. "When did you get that dress?"

Estelle reddened. "This week. I never spent so much on a dress before. It's an original from La Louise."

I whistled. La Louise is a boutique in Manhasset, an expensive chi-chi place I've heard of in conversation.

"You're really trying to make an impression, aren't you?" I asked with a twinge of jealousy. "Is Klausner so handsome?"

Estelle giggled. "Don't be silly. I've never met him. It's just that I need a new going-out dress and I liked this one. I think this is going to be a very fancy party. Yesterday I saw Myra Klausner coming out of the Gourmet Shop with two large shopping bags, and this morning Harvey asked Michael what we were going to bring."

The suburban custom of bringing a small objet d'art (known to my mother as a

chotchka) or a bottle of wine was new to me but agreeable. In honor of the fanciness of the party, I took a bottle of aquavit I had bought for myself on my last trip to Denmark. I didn't wear a turtleneck. I honored the occasion, however, by a new tie, one that Estelle had given me for my birthday.

We walked to the Klausners'. Mrs. Klausner herself opened the door for us. I had expected to see a big woman but not someone like Myra Klausner. She was no taller than Estelle but she was decidedly more imposing. She wore a white silk blouse straining at its buttons. Around her massive neck was a string of large red beads. Her face was red, too, and her pale blond hair was loosely tied in a bun at the back. She didn't look ready for a gala party.

"I'm so glad you could come," she boomed, taking my topcoat and Estelle's wrap. She led us into the living room, patting Estelle's arm as she did so. "My, you look lovely, dear! So elaborate, though.

The remark, its double nature at once complimentary and disparaging, changed Estelle's expression. Her answering smile became artificially fixed and she reached out her hand for my support as though there was a high step before her.

"Herman will be in a moment," Mrs. Klausner said. "He's getting more ice from the kitchen." She made the introductions to the other guests: a Mr. and Mrs. Antonius, a Dr. Leavitt and a Miss Gordon, the doctor's fiancée. Mr. Antonius, dark, slight, and nervous, wore a white turtleneck sans jacket; the doctor (of what I never learned during the course of the evening) wore an open-necked sport shirt and slacks; Mrs. Antonius had on a plain black dress adorned with a large gold brooch at the left shoulder; Miss Gordon, as befitted her presumed youth and single status, wore bellbottom velvet pants and a dark cotton print blouse. I felt sorry for Estelle. My tie made me self-conscious; I knew how she was feeling. She was definitely overdressed for such an informal gathering as this was.

What made it worse was Mrs. Klausner's ("call me Myra") insistence that Estelle stand up to have her jacket admired, "The dress is nice. A little too plain for my taste, but the jacket is adorable! That intricate embroidery! It looks almost as though it

were handmade. What wonderful machines they have nowadays!" "It is handmade," Estelle said, tightening her lips ever so slightly. "I got it at La Louise."

Myra clapped her hand to her mouth. "I made a boo-boo!" Her cuteness was in such sharp contrast to her appearance that we all, including Estelle, laughed. Myra shrugged. "Excuse me, dear. Me, I never buy in small stores so I wouldn't know about their reliability." She showed me the bar set-up. "Help yourself." While I made our drinks, she explained to the assenting murmurs of the other women (again including Estelle) that one advantage of shopping in a department store was not being obligated to buy merely because a salesgirl spent time with you. "Besides, if you change your mind, you can always return the dress, and no hard feelings."

The discussion (or rather, disquisition) about the dress was terminated by the entrance of our host with a bucket of ice cubes. Myra was big but Herman Klausner was bigger. Bald, beefy, moonfaced, broad of shoulder and of girth, he loomed over us, a Gulliver among the Lilliputians. He had a hearty handshake and a deep chesty laugh. He was not as obvious a master of the put down as his wife but he did well enough in his own way. He insisted on tasting our martinis, made a face, and said they were no good. He mixed another batch in substitution. They were better than those I had made.

Except for Estelle's discomfort, the evening passed pleasantly. Myra had potato chips and pretzels, cheese cubes and a dish of tiny pieces of herring, and finally a large tray of cocktail knishes. "Homemade," she announced. They were delicious. She offered to give Estelle the recipe.

Herman and Myra amazed me at the breadth of their interests and the skill with which they manipulated the conversational ball. The talk, while not brilliant, was above the level of the usual suburban affair. We agreed about the influence of the war on student politics. We discussed the effects of technologic changes on modern art. We laughed at the use of nudity as novelty in the theater. We argued about *Catch-22* being the best of the war novels.

The occupational status of the host and guests were soon identified. Mr. and Mrs. Antonius were real-estate brokers; Miss Gordon was a high school teacher; Dr. Leavitt worked for the state (in what capacity I couldn't discover); Herman Klausner

owned a raincoat factory in Queens. I was the one with an exotic background, being foreign buyer for a cutlery firm. Herman was immediately interested. He asked intelligent questions about my work and openly envied my frequent trips to Europe.

During our late snack (not at all what Estelle had envisaged — only lox, cream cheese, bagels, and a luscious chocolate cake), the talk turned to our community pool. Herman had definite ideas about next year's program.

"One of the reasons we all moved to the suburbs was to have a place for our children. Right? The swimming pool's fine but it's too loosely organized. Beginners get swimming lessons but once they've passed the test, they're on their own. We ought to have graded classes, not only by age but by skill. It would mean getting lifeguards. They'd have to get paid more, of course, but the assessment for each member would be trivial."

"Why assess everyone?" I asked. "Why not only those who want to take the classes? I'm satisfied with my breast stroke for all the swimming I do."

"For children's sake" Herman answered. "We eliminate the competitive spirit that way." He replied. His argument was persuasive. I promised to support him at the next meeting of the Pool Committee (of which all residents of our community are members).

PART 3

On the way home, I noticed Estelle was unusually quiet. When we undressed for bed, she picked up the jacket from the chair where she had tossed it and examined it critically at the dressing table light. "What's the problem, dear?" I asked her. "Did you get a food stain on it?"

"No," she muttered. "But I think I've been cheated. I hate to be made a fool of. See this?" She showed me a place where the stitching was loose. "Myra saw it and brought it to my attention while I was helping her clear away. This is an irregular." She stamped her foot. "I could cry! To spend so much money and then find out I could have bought the same thing at half price or less! The first thing tomorrow morning I'm bringing it back!" I reminded her that tomorrow was Sunday. "Then

Monday morning, and I'll give that La Louise a piece of my mind. Myra told me of a place in New York that sells high-style merchandise of the same type La Louise has, but not at such terribly high prices."

Estelle never wore the jacket again. On Monday, Mrs. Lochman, of La Louise, offered to redo the separated stitching but would neither take back the ensemble nor give a discount. Estelle was furious and, as so often happens when the cause of one's fury cannot be touched, projected her anger onto Myra Klausner. From the time of the party she avoided her. She never extended the customary return invitation in spite of my rather weak protests that she was being childish, the dress affair being her own fault, not Myra's.

My protests were weak because right then we were having trouble with Berenice. She refused Estelle's offer to drive her to school in bad weather. She preferred to walk with her friends, her lips blue, her legs goose-pimpling through the net stockings she insisted on wearing. We bore with her. "It's only a phase," we said, and our neighbors with daughters of about the same age agreed with us and like us waited impatiently for the inevitable biologic and psychological maturity. But they and we did not reckon with Emily Klausner. She had ripened faster than her classmates. Emily was helpful to the girls who followed her like a queen's entourage. She arranged dates for them, she gave them advice on eyeliners and earrings. All that, we could have tolerated, but not the hair. Berenice was late for dinner one evening. When she appeared her curly hair had been ironed straight and lank, and starting from one temple was a glaring wide white strand.

"I was at the beauty parlor," she explained. "This is a new style. It's sort of a club mark." Estelle raged. So did I.

"Next thing you'll be tattooing yourself!" I shouted.

"Like the girls who hang around with gangsters!"

We could do nothing about the streak except forbid its being touched up. Berenice wept and carried on. "I look like a freak!" she screamed. She did, I must admit. As the hair grew and the natural color returned, the whiteness began to look ridiculous.

Berenice developed a school phobia, the only cure for which, we decided, was a haircut, a procedure which further alienated Berenice, long straight hair being the current style.

Berenice's school work suffered during this period of Sturm und Drang. Before I left for Sweden I had a conference with her teacher. There I learned that Emily alone, of all the girls in the class, had not streaked her hair. Her explanation had been (not an excuse klausners make no excuses) that being a natural blond, the white streak would mar her looks, besides being unnecessary to single her out amongst the brunettes of various shades who surrounded her.

I insisted on all relations with the Klausners being broken off when I returned from Europe to find Joseph's leg in a cast, the result of an ice-skating accident. Not that I could blame Gerald Klausner. The accident was entirely my own son's fault. Gerald was merely teaching him figure skating; the laces were badly tied by Joseph himself. Enough was enough. I'm not superstitious. I don't believe in the evil eye but why take chances?

Of course, some inconveniences resulted. I had to say, "No, thanks. We need the exercise," when Herman Klausner brought over his snow blower to clean our driveway. We shoveled it at the risk of getting frostbite and sore muscles. I politely refused Herman's offer of a lift to the city in his car during the railway men's strike. Estelle changed butchers; the new one charged more for an inferior grade of meat. Berenice and Michael moped around the house, and Joseph had to buy his own magazines instead of borrowing Gerald's. But it was worth it. Serenity returned to our household.

PART 4

Spring came, and summer. The pool was opened. Herman's idea was a great success, so much so that a demand arose for a grand and glorious finish on the Sunday after Labor Day. An open swimming tournament by age groups was arranged. Even I, who had not been around for much of the summer, participated. I am a good swimmer, I can say without false modesty. I had observed my neighbors in the pool and I knew that I should reach the finals without much difficulty.

So many entrants signed up that it was decided to start the tournament at eight in the morning, with the drawings for pairs at seven. Michael was the most excited in our family. The committee had decided that all semifinalists in his age bracket would be rewarded with silver pins. Berenice did not join us at the pool. She sneered, "Fat chance you're going to have against the Klausners. They'll win every prize." Estelle, who was of the same opinion, said she'd stay home to keep Berenice company.

The drawing started with subjunior first. The little boys crowded around the bowl. Harris, the chief swimming instructor, pulled the cards two at a time and called off the names to be paired for the first elimination round. It was comical to see the boys eye their competitors, compare muscles and brag. Michael's name was called, and with it Harvey Klausner's. From where I sat, high up on the stand, I could see Michael bravely try to control his quivering underlip while a solitary tear rolled slowly down his cheek. I quickly ran down to him but it was too late. He had flung himself on Harvey, punching and kicking with his bare feet.

Harvey easily held him off at arm's length. "I didn't do anything to him," he cried aggrievedly, turning his face to me. "I know you didn't," I replied, and to myself I thought, but you exist.

I took Michael away. He fell into my arms and wept. "Why did it have to be Harvey? I can beat everybody else!" The statement may not have been true but I knew how he felt. I calmed him down and persuaded him to withdraw and default to Harvey. That was better than having to go through the heartbreak of defeat and another tantrum. "All right," he said, "but you'll win in the fathers' group, won't you?" Joseph, who was not a good swimmer and who had not entered the tournament, tried to explain to Michael that playing the game was more important than winning. That sophistry was beyond Michael's comprehension (and mine too, I must admit). I promised Michael I'd try hard to win.

Adults were to compete last. The drawing took up so much time that the children were getting restless, and Harris decided to postpone the adult drawings until after the boys and girls had finished their races.

As was to be expected, Harvey Klausner won in his age group, but not without an argument. His competitor, an angry redhead, complained that Harvey had kicked him on the turn. The judges overruled the claim but then Harvey in a gesture of magnanimity, offered the award, a little gold dolphin pin, to the redhead, "Just so there'll be no hard feelings." The redhead lost all control then and rushed at Harvey. He butted him in the abdomen and threw him into the deep end of the pool. The redhead was led away, wailing.

I had no great interest in the tournament. By the time the adults were reached, it was after one o'clock and I was hungry. So were Joseph and Michael. Joseph went home to watch a football game on TV. I had to stay because of Michael's insistence. He reproached me for not being foresighted enough to bring a picnic lunch. He pointed to the Klausners sitting on the grass at the far end of the pool. They were eating sandwiches and pickles, and drinking soda. I sent Michael down to the refreshment stand to get a hot dog and cherry pop for himself. I lost my appetite looking at the Klausners. I felt my doom hanging over me. I didn't need a Greek chorus to warn me of my fate. I didn't care for myself but I did for Michael. For a moment I thought of faking a heart attack but the thought was only fleeting. I would not only spoil the day for the other people, but I would be the unwilling recipient of the emergency care the Klausners would be sure to give me.

I drew Klausner. We were the first pair drawn. He waved to me. Then he clowned and danced around at the edge of the pool while the other pairs were being drawn. I stood morosely to one side. Poor Michael! I thought. He's going to be disappointed in his father.

Suddenly, just as the final two pairs came over to join us, Herman slipped. His feet slid from under him and he landed flat on his back. His head struck the tiling with a loud crack. He was knocked out.

I stood there, fixed with my mouth open. It couldn't have been more than fifteen or twenty seconds but it seemed like forever before Herman opened his eyes, shook his head, felt it gingerly, and sat up. "What happened?" came the cries and a little knot clustered around him. Herman had a bump at the back of his head and said he

felt woozy. Myra and Harris helped him into the lounge.

The competition was delayed until Dr. Meyers, who was present, came out after examining Herman and announced, "Nothing serious." Naturally, Herman was hors de combat. Atkins, who said the accident had made him too nervous to swim, withdrew.

I was paired with Novgrad. I won. Novgrad was very slow, my opposing semifinalist got a cramp, and the finalist was too winded. While I was swimming, above the noise I could hear Michael's piping cheers and Herman's booming encouragement to me from the deck chair where he was sitting.

What good was winning? When we were dressed I handed Michael the gold pin to wear home. He slapped it from my hand to the floor and cried, "You didn't win against Mr. Klausner!" I knew what he meant.

Estelle and I talked things over during the following week. We rode around several developments in the area until we saw a house for sale, one that would be adequate for us, and placed a deposit on it. It wasn't as roomy as the one we were living in and the yard was neglected but it would do. The children would not have to change schools and yet it was far enough away from the Klausners for us to be safe – we thought.

Herman Klausner saved me money on the sale of our old house. He met me at the barber's.

"The grapevine has it that you're selling your place. Does the agent have an exclusive on it?" When I said no, he nodded. "Good. I think I have a buyer for you. You won't have to pay any commission if it's a private deal between two principals.

I have a friend of mine who wants to move out here from Brooklyn, and I'm sure he'll be interested." I was going to say, "Please, Herman, don't do me any favors," but, coward that I was, I merely smiled weakly at him.

His friend (poor man!) bought our house. We moved a month later and sighed with relief, all of us, when we stood in the empty hallway of the new house.

The Klausners were done away with.

I felt, however, that I owed Herman something for his unsolicited help. I sent him a little note of thanks with a present, a Danish silver punch-bowl set. Myra called Estelle and raved about its beauty.

"It's a gorgeous showpiece," she said. "I wouldn't dare use it. And besides, when do I make punch?"

Showpiece or not, she liked it well enough to want first a matching tray, and then a tea service.

"You get to Copenhagen so often, it's not really a bother, is it?" Then it was a carving set and last time it was a cruet stand. "I saw it in the same pattern at George Jensen's."

I figured it out. Between the nuisance and the duty, in the long run it would have been cheaper for me to have paid commission. Klausners are klausners.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. submissive – always willing to obey

Strict parents expect their child to be submissive.

2. offensive – impolite, insulting

The novel has been criticized for being offensive to Muslim.

3. beneficiary (of) – someone who gets advantages from an action or change

The rich were the main beneficiaries of the tax cuts.

4. pernicious – very harmful or evil often in a way that is difficult to notice.

We are so easily led to pernicious solutions.

5. expose to – to subject to danger

His behavior on the Senate floor exposed him to ridicule.

The article said that children exposed to smoke are more likely to be sick.

6. avoid – try not to do smth

I tried to swerve to avoid a cat.

I avoid getting down to work.

- 7. reciprocate** – to do or give sth., because smth. similar has been done or given to you.
In 1979 Egypt made a genuine offer of peace and Israel reciprocated with an offer of territory.
- 8. contingency** – a situation that might happen in the future and cause problem.
A will should allow for contingencies.
- 9. fail** – to be unsuccessful in smth./ not to do what is expected, or needed
Peace talks between the two countries have failed.
Unfortunately, Larry failed to submit his proposal on time.
- 10. lend** – to give money or things on condition that they are returned
He lent me his lawnmower.
The bank lends money at high interests.
- 11. a supply of** – an amount of something that is available to be used
I've only got a week's supply of tablets left.
There was a plentiful supply of cheap labor.
- 12. expense** – an amount of money needed or used to do or buy something; cost
We have to start cutting down on our expenses.
The house was redecorated at great expense.
- 13. outset** – at the/from the beginning of an event or process.
It was clear from the outset that there were going to be problems.
- 14. a while** – a period of time, especially a short one
It takes a while to recover from the operation.
in a while/for a while/ a little/short while
Mr. Thomas will be with you in a while.
At last, he could relax for a while.
- 15. recognize** – to know who so. is or what smth. is, because you learned about them in the past
I didn't recognize you in your uniform.
It was malaria, but Dr Lee hadn't recognized the symptoms.
- 16. underneath** – directly under another object or covered by it
The car was rusty underneath.

used to say what someone's character is really like

She seems confident, but she's really quite shy underneath.

17. hostility toward/to/between – a feeling or attitude that is extremely unfriendly

Long after World War II, many Poles still expressed hostility toward Germans.

18. inferiority – a feeling that you are much less important, smart than other people

He had a deep-rooted feeling of inferiority.

inferior – not good, or not as good as smb. or smth. else

Their furniture is certainly cheaper, but it's of inferior quality.

19. irrelevant – not useful or not relating to a particular situation

Students viewed Latin as boring and irrelevant.

The comments seemed irrelevant.

20. gadget – a small, useful, and cleverly-designed machine or tool

He showed her several electronic gadgets, such as a watch that you can use as a phone.

21. amazement – a feeling of great surprise

Fans looked on in amazement as Robbins missed a third goal for the team.

22. driveway (in/on the drive) – the hard area or road between your house and the street

He parked his car in the driveway.

23. amused at/by – if you are amused by smth., you think it is funny and you smile

Ellen seemed amused by the whole situation.

24. arouse interest/expectations etc. – to make you become interested or expect smth.

Matt's behavior was arousing the interest of the neighbors.

arouse hostility/suspicion/anger etc. – to make smb. feel very unfriendly and angry

A great deal of anger was aroused by Campbell's decision.

25. outlet – a store selling the goods of a particular company at lower prices

The company has more than 12000 outlets nationwide.

26. flatter – to praise

They were flattered by the invitation of a mayor.

27. election – when people vote to choose someone for an official position

The Labor Party won the 2001 election by a huge majority.

28. extinct – an extinct type of animal or plant does not exist any more

Dinosaurs have been extinct for millions of years.

29. at least – even if something better is not true or is not done

I don't expect you to pay me, but you could at least cover my expenses.

The house still needed a lot of work, but at least the kitchen was finished.

30. fling – to throw smth. somewhere using a lot of force

He flung the box into the river.

31. punish – to make smb. suffer because they have done smth. wrong or broken the law

He promised to punish severely any officials found guilty of electoral fraud.

32. proficient in/at – able to do something well or skillfully.

She is a proficient typist / She is proficient in three languages.

33. mood – the way you feel at a particular time

It usually takes me a couple of days to get into the holiday mood.

The mood of the crowd was unpredictable.

34. warning – smth., esp. a statement, that tells you that something bad might happen

Soldiers began firing into the crowd without any warning.

The weather report gave a warning of more snow and icy roads.

35. forbid – to order someone not to do something

The management forbids employees to accept tips from customers.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. chance, emergency, predicament

2. hatred, spite, enmity, unfriendliness

3. praise, compliment, brown nose

4. obedient, yielding, compliant

5. beginning, start, onset

6. unpleasant, insulting, irritating, annoying

7. return, make up for, retaliate

8. harmful, evil, malicious, damaging

9. skilled, competent, adept, versed

10. discipline, penalize, teach a lesson

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. The stereotype that women are _____ is completely false.
A. malicious B. submissive C. proficient D. ridiculous
2. We stopped to ask someone the way and he was really _____ to us.
A. yielding B. offensive C. damaging D. adept
3. Some people think that the effects of advertising are _____ .
A. pernicious B. versed C. compliant D. annoying
4. When he spoke I was expected to _____ with some remark of my own.
A. discipline B. praise C. penalize D. reciprocate
5. Firms need to include a _____ fund within the budget.
A. spite B. enmity C. outset D. contingency
6. A person with higher qualifications can get a better paid job at the ___ of their career.
A. outpost B. outset C. emergency D. outlet
7. There is a lot of public _____ to the tax.
A. expense B. predicament C. hostility D. inferiority
8. Perry would always _____ Mrs. Mitchell by praising her cooking.
A. fail B. forbid C. flatter D. retaliate
9. It's unfair to _____ a whole class for the actions of one or two students.
A. punish B. prohibit C. brown nose D. arouse
10. There's only one way to become _____ at anything - practice!
A. proficient B. irritating C. malicious D. unpleasant

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

contingency	pernicious	reciprocate	submissive	punish
offensive	flatter	hostility	outset	proficient

1. Some children may be _____ to this approach while others fight back and will not have their willpower broken.
2. Apparently some viewers found the show _____ .
3. In 1937, she had felt she had had enough of the _____ course of human history.
4. I would like to _____ your fine hospitality.

5. City officials have implemented what they call Phase I of a _____ plan aimed at bringing pollution levels down.
6. You are going to love this book from the _____ .
7. Pictures of refugees aroused popular _____ towards the war.
8. He agreed to do it because it _____ his ego.
9. My parents decided to _____ me by withdrawing financial support.
10. Before you can study at a British university, you have to be _____ in English.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. proficient | A. imposing | B. compliant | C. skilled | D. malicious |
| 2. outset | A. supply | B. beginning | C. outskirts | D. estate |
| 3. pernicious | A. versed | B. compliant | C. inferior | D. harmful |
| 4. submissive | A. yielding | B. irrelevant | C. spiteful | D. adept |
| 5. flatter | A. insult | B. retaliate | C. hate | D. compliment |
| 6. offensive | A. versed | B. annoying | C. obedient | D. optional |
| 7. reciprocate | A. make up for | B. expose | C. damage | D. fail |
| 8. punish | A. irritate | B. arouse | C. discipline | D. persuade |
| 9. contingency | A. unfriendliness | B. emergency | C. expense | D. inferiority |
| 10. hostility | A. predicament | B. damage | C. harm | D. enmity |

Part 2

- 1. jealous** of – feeling angry and unhappy because smb. has smth that you wish you had

Why are you so jealous of his success?

You're just jealous of her.

- 2. custom** – something that is done by people in a society because it is traditional

The guide offers information on local customs.

It is the custom in Japan to take your shoes off when you go into someone's house.

- 3. be new to** – unfamiliar, not experienced before

This idea was new to him.

Since I'm new to the area, I was pleased to have the opportunity to meet people.

4. in honor of – in order to show how much you respect smb. or to celebrate an event

The stadium was named in honor of the club's first chairman.

A special dinner will be held in her honor.

An oak tree was planted in honor of the occasion.

5. occasion – an important social event or ceremony

I'm saving this bottle of champagne for a special occasion.

They presented him with a gift to mark the occasion..

6. turtleneck – a type of sweater with a high, close-fitting collar

She dressed either in blue-jeans with a black turtleneck top and black boots or in very short miniskirts.

7. imposing – large, important-looking, and impressive

It's one of the most distinguished hotels in Italy, grand and imposing.

He's a tall, quietly spoken, but imposing figure.

8. wrap – a piece of cloth that you wear around your shoulders to keep you warm

The women wore evening gowns and light summer wraps.

9. elaborate – having a lot of details, carefully planned and organized in great detail

She wore a silk dress embroidered with elaborate patterns.

Mike had worked out an elaborate system for categorizing his collection of CDs.

10. disparage – to criticize, put down

"The comments were not meant to disparage any company's products," stated the publisher.

11. artificial – not real but made to be like something that is real or natural

Our ice cream contains no artificial colors or flavors.

12. plain – without anything added or without decoration; simple

Do you have any plain white shirts?

Your essay should be written on plain paper.

13. presume – to believe, assume

The price includes all your transportation and hotels, I presume.

14. gathering – meeting of a group of people

They announced their engagement at a family gathering in Vermont.

15. reliable – smb. or smth. that is reliable can be trusted or depended on

Eating sensibly and taking regular exercise is a fairly reliable method of losing weight.

In Africa, cellular phones are often the only reliable way of communicating.

In many offices the most reliable people with the longest service are the secretaries.

16. disquisition – a long speech or written report

For my part, I endured a long disquisition on the Tractarians from an opinionated university liberal.

17. terminate – to end or stop, or to cause smth. to end or stop

Trains that used to terminate in Hoboken now run into New York.

It sounded like she was trying to terminate the conversation.

18. loom – to appear as a large, unclear shape, especially in a threatening way:

The mountain loomed in front of us.

likely to happen very soon:

The two countries believe that a crisis is looming.

As the day of my interview loomed, I became increasingly nervous.

19. obvious – easy to notice or understand

The obvious way of reducing pollution is to use cars less.

For obvious reasons the police cannot give any more details about the case.

The most obvious example of an information source is a dictionary.

20. in substitution – to use something new or different instead of something else.

Coach Packard made two substitutions in the second half.

substitute for /with

You can substitute broccoli for spinach in the recipe.

21. announce – to officially tell people about smth., esp. about a plan or a decision:

The government has announced plans to create 10,000 new jobs.

22. real-estate – property (land or buildings)

the business of selling houses or land

The real estate market, the largest component of the local economy, has grown to record levels.

Homeowners who want to sell their homes without a real estate agent can now advertise their residential properties free on the Internet.

23. capacity – a particular position or job; a role

She was speaking in her capacity as a judge.

24. background – smb's family history, education, social class etc., experience

All of the men have different religious backgrounds.

Steve has a background in computer engineering.

facts or history that help to explain how or why it happened:

To understand the war, we need to consider its historical and political background.

25. cutlery – knives, forks, and spoons used for eating food/silverware (*Am.*)

Put the cutlery in the drawer.

26. envy – to wish that you had (a quality or possession) that another person has

I envy people so much who feel carefree.

27. frequent – happening often; common

She makes frequent trips home to Beijing.

28. envisage – to think (imagine) that smth. is likely to happen in the future

The changes have been greater than we ever envisaged.

I don't envisage working with him again.

29. bagel – a small ring-shaped type of bread

30. community – people who live in the same area, or have the same interests, religion, etc.

We meet once a month to discuss community problems.

The committee will investigate ways of recruiting doctors and nurses for rural communities.

31. suburbs – an area away from the center of a town or city

They live in Lakewood, a suburb of Denver.

32. assess – to make a judgment about a person or a situation/ calculate the value of smth.

It is difficult to assess how much has actually been done.

The house was assessed at \$170000.

33. eliminate – to completely get rid of something that is unnecessary or unwanted

The credit card eliminates the need for cash or checks.

Fatty foods should be eliminated from the diet.

to defeat smb. in a competition, so that they no longer take part in it

Our team was eliminated in the first round.

34. support – to say that you agree with an idea or people, and usually help them

The bill was supported by a large majority in the Senate.

The U.S. strongly supports the trade agreement.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. replace, exchange places, switch _____
2. foresee , anticipate, forestall, expect, predict _____
3. criticize, depreciate, belittle, malign _____
4. advocate, aid, assist, back, stand up for, stick up for _____
5. education, qualification, experience, history _____
6. end, finish, stop, cease, wrap up, wind up _____
7. regular, common, usual, repeated _____
8. evaluate, rate, estimate, size up _____
9. condition, place, position, role, job, function _____
10. outskirts, outpost, country-side, residential area _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. The school has students from many different _____ .
A. substitution B. backgrounds C. disquisition D. elimination
2. Rollins will be working in an advisory _____ on this project.
A. outskirts B. capacity C. estimate D. experience
3. You can _____ oil for butter in this recipe.
A. rate B. anticipate C. substitute D. eradicate

4. The scheme cost a lot more than we had originally _____ .
 A. ceased B. depreciated C. replaced D. envisaged
5. My parents didn't have to _____ me when I was at college because I received a grant.
 A. anticipate B. wrap up C. support D. size up
6. Matcham's theatres were widely _____ by architects.
 A. disparaged B. forestalled C. expelled D. supported
7. The court ruled that the contract must be _____ .
 A. dispensed B. terminated C. predicted D. followed
8. My family moved to the _____ when I was 10.
 A. suburbs B. real estate C. history D. center
9. Gunshots are so _____ in the neighborhood that she rarely calls the police anymore.
 A. optional B. frequent C. available D. plain
10. He has written a guidebook that _____ the quality of Californian hotels.
 A. looms B. foresees C. assesses D. maligns

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

assessed	substitute	frequent	envisage	capacity
disparage	background	suburbs	support	terminate

1. Shaw's Market is offering a discount to _____ shoppers.
2. Most of the people who live in the _____ work in the city.
3. The total value of the paintings is _____ at \$20 million.
4. We strongly _____ the peace process.
5. He _____ his business competitors, saying they are all a bunch of amateurs compared to him.
6. The company had the right to _____ his employment at any time.
7. It took five years for the author to research _____ information for her new book.
8. If plums are difficult to find, figs can be _____ .
9. I cannot _____ what the circumstances will be in twenty years' time.
10. Quan will continue to serve in his present _____ as treasurer.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. assess | A. estimate | B. replace | C. anticipate | D. follow |
| 2. suburb | A. condition | B. outskirts | C. cutlery | D. rate |
| 3. frequent | A. optional | B. available | C. common | D. elaborate |
| 4. background | A. support | B. qualification | C. substitution | D. real estate |
| 5. capacity | A. enmity | B. predicament | C. supply | D. function |
| 6. terminate | A. dispense with | B. retaliate | C. forestall | D. finish |
| 7. disparage | A. eliminate | B. evaluate | C. depreciate | D. replace |
| 8. envisage | A. predict | B. malign | C. wind up | D. forbid |
| 9. substitute | A. size up | B. wrap up | C. switch | D. envy |
| 10. support | A. belittle | B. aid | C. estimate | D. loom |

Part 3

- 1. toss** – to throw especially smth. light

She crumpled the letter and tossed it into the fire.

- 2. stain** – a mark that is difficult to remove

to accidentally make a mark on something

There was a dark red stain on the carpet.

- 3. cheat on/at** – to behave in a dishonest way in order to win or to get an advantage

The movie's young heroine lies, cheats, and steals to get what she wants.

Mrs. Mitchell caught me cheating on the history test.

A guy named Bounce liked to cheat at dice.

- 4. stitching** – a line of stitches in a piece of material

I sew it on so you can't see the stitching.

- 5. loose** – not firmly fixed in place

One of my buttons came loose.

I'd better sew that loose button before it comes off.

- 6. irregular** – having a shape, surface, pattern etc. that is not even, smooth

Cruising underwater, you see pale outlines of the irregular sea bottom.

happening or done at unexpected times

Some weeks, I work long, irregular hours.

7. remind – to say smth. to help smb remember smth.

She reminded him of his appointment.

He reminded the kids to wash their hands.

to cause smb. to remember smb./smth.

The song reminds me of Paris.

8. merchandise – goods that are bought and sold

This store has a wide selection of merchandise for sale.

9. a discount – a reduction in the usual price for something

Air UK are currently offering tickets to students at a special discount.

Do you get a discount if you pay in cash?

There's a 30% discount on all electrical goods.

10. furious – extremely angry

They were furious at finding no doctors on duty at the hospital.

Sandy was furious with me for forgetting to pick her up.

11. affair – public or political events and activities

They were accused of interfering in China's internal affairs.

things connected with your personal life, your financial situation etc.

I am not prepared to discuss my financial affairs with the press.

an event

Their wedding was a pretty boring affair.

12. fault – responsible for mistake, blame, defect

It's your fault we're late.

I think there's a fault in one of the loudspeakers.

Quality control staff are employed to check for any faults.

13. inevitable – certain to happen

Since the leaders can't agree, more fighting is inevitable.

14. entourage – the group of people who work for an famous person

Her usual entourage includes musicians, backup singers, and technicians.

15. tolerate – to accept smth. bad or difficult, even though you do not like it:

They don't have the best service, but I tolerate it because I love their food.

16. strand – a single thin piece of thread, wire, hair etc.:

He reached out and brushed a strand of hair away from her face.

17. rage at/about/against – to feel very angry about something

For twenty years, Evans raged against minority injustices.

He raged at me for sending the letter out before he had seen it.

18. freak – somebody, who looks very strange or behaves in a very unusual way

These glasses make me look like a freak.

Women who studied engineering used to be considered freaks.

computer/fitness/jazz etc. – smb., who is very interested in a particular thing or activity

One Beatle's freak is reported to have paid \$18,000 for Paul McCartney's birth certificate.

19. ridiculous – very silly or unreasonable

That's a ridiculous idea!

I'd look ridiculous in a dress like that.

It's an absolutely ridiculous decision.

20. alienate – to make someone feel that they do not belong in a particular group

He felt that his experiences had alienated him from society.

21. suffer – to experience or show the effects of smth. bad, become worse

About 50,000 bicyclists suffer serious head injuries each year.

I'm worried and my work is beginning to suffer.

Small businesses have suffered financially during the recession.

22. streak – to cover something with lines of color, liquid etc.

The sky was streaked yellow and purple.

colored line *Nancy dyes her hair to hide the gray streaks.*

23. mar – to make something less attractive or enjoyable

Water will mar the finish of the polished wood.

24. cast – a protective case that is put over your arm, leg etc. because the bone is broken

Murray has his leg in a cast.

25. blame – to say or think that smb. or smth. is responsible for smth. bad

Don't blame me – it's not my fault.

Democrats have blamed Republicans for the failure to reach an agreement.

26. superstitious – smb. who believes that some objects or actions are lucky or unlucky

My mother is so superstitious she won't step on a crack when we walk down the street.

27. inconvenience – smth. that causes trouble or difficulty and is annoying

Changing planes was an inconvenience, but there were no direct flights.

28. lift – a journey in one's car

Do you want a lift into town? / John gave me a lift home.

He very kindly offered me a lift.

29. charge – to take money for goods or services

I think they charge too much for football tickets

The hotel charges \$125 a night.

30. borrow – to take smth. from smb. with the intention of giving it back after using it

Could I borrow your bike until next week?

31. be worth – important, interesting, useful or helpful

There are only two things worth reading in this newspaper - the TV listings and the sports page.

I don't think it's worth talking about any more.

The film is well worth seeing.

The local museum is worth a visit.

enjoyable or beneficial despite the effort needed:

It was a long climb to the top of the hill, but the view from the top was worth it.

32. shovel – to lift and move earth, stones etc with a shovel (a tool)

The workmen shoveled gravel onto the road.

33. serenity – peaceful atmosphere

He wrote of the beauty and serenity of the great river.

34. household – all the people who live together in one house

She became a part of his household.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. bear, stand, endure _____
2. damage, ruin, spoil _____
3. mistake, blame, shortcoming, weak point _____
4. calm, tranquil, placid, quiet _____
5. absurd, funny, silly, unreasonable, hilarious _____
6. trick, deceive, fool, crib, caboodle, hoodwink _____
7. come between, disunite, estrange, separate, divide _____
8. produce, commodity, goods _____
9. matter, event, subject, task, topic _____
10. free, untied, unattached, messy, scattered _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Somehow, people seem to think it's my _____ for letting him in.
A. fault B. subject C. streak D. strand
2. Don't be _____ – there's no way I can buy a car.
A. placid B. ridiculous C. hilarious D. messy
3. His comments have _____ a lot of young voters.
A. alienated B. endured C. spoiled D. suffered
4. The child's face was _____ and beautiful.
A. silly B. irregular C. serene D. furious
5. The fire at the warehouse destroyed _____ valued at over \$2 million.
A. task B. discount C. household D. merchandise
6. For years the workers have had to _____ low wages and terrible working conditions.
A. blame B. estrange C. tolerate D. divide
7. He doesn't trust car mechanics – he thinks they're all trying to _____ him.
A. cheat B. charge C. disunite D. spoil
8. Electricity cables and oil pipelines _____ many of the world's most beautiful landscapes.
A. hoodwink B. mar C. stand D. toss

9. The awards celebration is an annual _____ in Hollywood.
 A. affair B. shortcoming C. commodity D. stain
10. Some of the floorboards are _____ and they creak when you walk on them.
 A. tranquil B. unreasonable C. compliant D. loose

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

serene	fault	merchandise	affair	mar
loose	alienate	ridiculous	tolerate	cheat

1. She seems to be able to _____ any kind of behavior from the students.
2. Studies indicate about 20 to 30 percent of college students _____ .
3. Jan looked out over a _____ landscape of gentle hills.
4. The garage claimed it was just a _____ connection.
5. The _____ is attractively displayed and the assistants are friendly and helpful.
6. The whole world was waiting for the outcome of the Watergate _____ .
7. During the rest of that day there was no other adventure to _____ the peace of their journey.
8. It's partly their own _____ if they don't get promoted.
9. It's _____ that we have to wait six weeks.
10. The company fears noisy brightly-lit shops are _____ older customers.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. **merchandise** A. shovel B. inconvenience C. produce D. disquisition
2. **tolerate** A. anticipate B. stand C. eliminate D. terminate
3. **fault** A. blame B. fake C. spite D. cast
4. **ridiculous** A. pernicious B. silly C. placid D. funny
5. **alienate** A. spoil B. estrange C. endure D. estimate
6. **loose** A. quiet B. hilarious C. unattached D. adept
7. **affair** A. subject B. shortcoming C. commodity D. freak
8. **mar** A. endure B. damage C. eradicate D. cease
9. **cheat** A. belittle B. expel C. predict D. trick
10. **serene** A. messy B. unreasonable C. tranquil D. compliant

Part 4

1. participate – to take part in or become involved in an activity

The teacher tries to get everyone to participate in the classroom discussion

2. reward – to give smth. to smb. because they have done smth. good or helpful

The performers were rewarded with flowers and candy from the audience.

3. sneer – to smile or speak in a way that is not nice and shows you have no respect

You might sneer (at it), but a lot of people like this sort of music.

4. draw/be drawn – to choose a card, ticket etc. by chance

The winning lottery numbers will be drawn on Saturday evening.

drawing – an occasion when smb. or smth. is chosen by chance

England has been selected to play Germany in the drawing for the first round of the World Cup.

5. competitor – a person, team, company etc. that is competing with another

Last year they sold twice as many computers as their competitors.

Two of the competitors failed to show up for the race.

6. brag – to talk too proudly about what you have done, what you own etc., boast

Julia used to brag that her family had a villa in Spain.

7. persuade – to cause smb. to do or believe smth, esp. by explaining why they should

The government is trying to persuade consumers to save more.

8. withdraw – to remove sth. or take it back, stop participating in activity

A knee injury forced Joyner to withdraw from the tournament.

9. defeat – to cause smb. to lose in a competition or war so that you can win

Bill Clinton defeated George Bush for the presidency in 1992.

10. tantrum – a sudden moment of unreasonable anger and annoyance

Rachel threw a tantrum when we didn't get her an ice cream cone.

11. sophistry – reasons or explanations that seem correct but are really false

But Pascal, under the influence of Jansenism, was fundamentally hostile to the Jesuits and their notorious sophistries.

12. comprehension – the ability to understand something, esp. completely

Some politicians seem to have no comprehension of what it's like to be poor.

- 13. restless** – unable or unwilling to keep still, especially because you are nervous or bored
The kids quickly grew restless and impatient.
After a few weeks in Marseille, I grew restless and decided to move on.
- 14. postpone** – to change an event, action etc. to a later time or date
The trip has been postponed twice.
- 15. overrule** – to change an order or decision, using your official power
After seeing new evidence the judge overruled the court's original decision.
- 16. claim** – a statement that smth. is true, even though it has not been proved
After the fire we made a claim to our insurance company.
- 17. magnanimity**- kindness, ability to forgive.
She accepted the criticism with magnanimity.
- 18. award** – a prize or money given to smb. to reward them for smth they have done
Paltrow won the "Best Actress" award.
An avid Everton supporter, Christopher was nominated for the award by a teacher.
The most prestigious awards given for journalism are presented annually by Columbia University.
- 19. reproach** for – to criticize/find fault with
He is still reproaching me for the accident.
- 20. foresighted** – able to anticipate, predict what will probably happen
Luckily I'd had the foresight to get in plenty of food.
- 21. pickles** – a cucumber preserved in vinegar or salt water
At both lunch and dinner, a small salad, miso soup, pickles and rice are included.
- 22. refreshment** – food and drinks that are provided at a meeting, party, etc.
Refreshments will be served after the meeting.
refreshment stand – a place where foods and drinks are provided at a party
- 23. fake** – to pretend/ make an exact copy of smth. to deceive people/ a copy, a false thing
She faked her mother's signature on the permission form.
The toy looked like a real gun but it was a fake.
He was caught with a fake passport.

24. fleeting – continuing for a short period of time

He had a fleeting moment of panic but quickly recovered.

25. spoil – to have a bad effect on smth. so that it is no longer attractive, enjoyable, etc.

The bad weather completely spoiled our holiday.

I don't want to spoil your fun.

26. edge – the outer or farthest point of something

They walked down to the water's edge.

My uncle's house is on the edge of town near the freeway.

27. morose – silent., sad

On the first workday of the year everyone at the office seemed morose.

28. slide – to move smoothly over a surface

The children were having a great time, sliding around on the polished floor.

29. cluster – to come together or be together in groups

Reporters clustered together outside office.

30. woozy – feeling weak and unsteady, dizzy

When I stood up, I felt a little woozy.

31. winded – having difficulty breathing, because you have just done some physical activity

He was overweight and out of shape, and he got winded easily.

32. slap – to hit smb. with a palm

She slapped him across the face and stormed out of the room.

33. developments – a group of buildings, houses, offices

New housing developments are spoiling the countryside for everyone.

There was a new development on the edge of the town.

34. place / put down a deposit – money you pay in advance for sth.

She had already put down a deposit on a ship ticket for the two of us.

35. roomy – having a lot of space

Her new apartment is very roomy.

36. neglected – not taken care of smth.

The house wore a neglected look.

37. commission – an amount of money paid to so for selling smth.

Each dealer makes 20% commission on his sale.

38. deal – an agreement or arrangement, esp. in business

They bargained with each other but finally agreed to a deal.

She got a really good deal on her new car.

39. owe – to need to give someone back money that they have lent you

How much do I owe you?

to feel grateful to smb. for smth.

I owe you a lot for all you did for me.

40. unsolicited help/advice/opinion, gifts – things you receive that you do not ask for

The record company receives dozens of unsolicited demo tapes each week.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. opponent, rival, contestant, adversary _____
2. overcome, conquer, beat _____
3. understanding, intelligence, capacity, awareness _____
4. ignore, forget, disregard, be irresponsible, be careless _____
5. put off, delay, defer _____
6. brief, quick, transient, evanescent, fugacious _____
7. take back, remove, quit, drop out, back out of _____
8. gloomy, depressed, sad, cheerless _____
9. blame, shame, reprimand, disparage, rebuke _____
10. large, spacious, extensive _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. For one _____ moment, Paula allowed herself to forget her troubles.

- A. yielding B. large C. fleeting D. gloomy

2. As a result of the Paris peace negotiations, most American forces _____
from Vietnam in 1973.

- A. reprimanded B. withdrew C. conquered D. delayed

3. The _____ in the 100m sprint are being asked to take their places at the start.
 A. competitors B. principals C. freaks D. supporters
4. The island has 24 _____ bungalows scattered about the beach, excellent facilities.
 A. roomy B. brief C. woozy D. cheerless
5. He's still _____ himself for the accident.
 A. beating B. reproaching C. deferring D. consoling
6. Newcastle were _____ by 3 goals to 2.
 A. claimed B. defeated C. persuaded D. terminated
7. Since the accident she's been _____ and moody.
 A. irresponsible B. extensive C. morose D. restless
8. Soon, Barker was _____ the farm and spending most of his time in the casino.
 A. disparaging B. assessing C. bragging D. neglecting
9. The meeting's been _____ until tomorrow.
 A. spoiled B. faked C. clustered D. postponed
10. They don't have the least _____ of what I'm trying to do.
 A. comprehension B. magnanimity C. development D. refreshment

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

fleeting	postpone	neglect	morose	comprehension
roomy	defeat	withdraw	reproach	competitor

1. The research project will focus on children's _____ of pretence.
2. The General was _____ by his allies for failing to inform them of his plans.
3. If we're going to succeed, we'll have to provide something that our ___ don't.
4. After two children had been hurt, the company was forced to _____ the toy from store shelves.
5. Carol was paying a _____ visit to Paris.
6. The President had been criticized for _____ domestic issues.
7. Some people become _____ and depressed when they first retire.
8. He bought a surprisingly _____ car.
9. For the sixth consecutive year, Oxford _____ Cambridge today in the annual boat race.
10. Several of today's football games have been _____ because of heavy snow.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. competitor | A. rival | B. suburb | C. terminator | D. follower |
| 2. fleeting | A. extensive | B. hilarious | C. transient | D. scattered |
| 3. reproach | A. estimate | B. predict | C. endure | D. blame |
| 4. morose | A. fugacious | B. depressed | C. malicious | D. hostile |
| 5. roomy | A. versed | B. inferior | C. placid | D. spacious |
| 6. neglect | A. disregard | B. overcome | C. rebuke | D. malign |
| 7. comprehension | A. contingency | B. substitution | C. intelligence | D. sophistry |
| 8. withdraw | A. retaliate | B. remove | C. depreciate | D. forestall |
| 9. defeat | A. beat | B. fail | C. fake | D. slide |
| 10. postpone | A. dispense | B. put off | C. expel | D. eradicate |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Parts 1 & 2

- 1. point out** – to direct attention toward (something)

Angela pointed out some spelling errors in my paper.

- 2. run out of** – to use something completely so that nothing is left

He just ran out of ideas./ Time was running out.

We ran out of gas on the freeway last night.

- 3. look forward to** – to feel excited about smth. that might happen in future

She is looking forward to the wedding.

- 4. think up** – to invent a plan or solution

Just give him five minutes and he'll think up an excuse.

- 5. take up** – to fill, occupy space, time, etc.

This work takes all my time up. / This big bed takes up a lot of room.

- 6. go on** – to continue without stopping

The noise goes on 24 hours a day. / The screaming went on and on.

Go on, tell me what happened next.

- 7. carry out** – to perform or complete (a job or activity); to fulfill

John listened carefully and carried out the teacher's instructions.

I was elected to carry out a program, the governor said, and I have every intention of carrying it out.

8. put down – to make smb. feel foolish and unimportant

They never put down other companies in their commercials.

Did you have to put me down in front of everybody?

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. put down | a. to complete a job |
| 2. think up | b. to show |
| 3. carry out | c. to feel excited about smth. |
| 4. point out | d. to finish |
| 5. go on | e. to humiliate |
| 6. take up | f. to invent a solution |
| 7. run out of | g. to continue |
| 8. look forward to | h. to fill space, time |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. I hate the way Dave humiliates me the whole time.
2. The policeman directed attention to the fact that the law forbids public sale of firecrackers.
3. The boss is in the States, but he left us with a long list of instructions to fulfill.
4. She was trying to invent an excuse.
5. I am excited about seeing Jane.
6. They didn't have any money and had to abandon the project.
7. The oceans occupy the greater part of the earth's surface.
8. *I won't continue working in this job forever, he said.*

3. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES WITH THE PHRASAL VERBS.

1. Mary _____ a funny game for the children to play.
2. I am _____ the party very much – all friends are coming.
3. I don't go to the gym it _____ too much time.
4. Though tired and hungry, the Scouts _____ until they reached camp.
5. The school secretary _____ that the closing date for making applications had passed.
6. Turn off the water supply before _____ repairs.
7. She enjoys _____ me _____ in front of other people.
8. By the time they got back to the camp, they nearly _____ water.

Part 3

1. clear away – to make a place look tidier by removing things or putting things back

When dinner was done and cleared away, Auntie Lou made some tea.

2. find out – to get information, after trying to discover it or by chance

How did you find out about the party?

3. reckon with – to consider smth., take into account

Anyone attempting to invade the country will have to reckon with the peacekeeping force.

4. hang around – to pass time, waste away time

Jim hangs around with some boys who live in his neighborhood.

5. carry on – to continue to do or be involved with (something)

Dianne is carrying on the family tradition by becoming a lawyer.

6. single out – to choose smb. from among a group of people to praise or criticize

She was singled out by the police because she filed the complaint.

7. break off – to end a relationship

The governments broke off diplomatic relations.

She returned the ring and they broke off their engagement.

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>clear away</i> | a. <i>to end a relationship</i> |
| 2. <i>single out</i> | b. <i>to make a place look tidier</i> |
| 3. <i>find out</i> | c. <i>to continue</i> |
| 4. <i>reckon with</i> | d. <i>to spend time</i> |
| 5. <i>break off</i> | e. <i>to get information</i> |
| 6. <i>carry on</i> | f. <i>to consider</i> |
| 7. <i>hang around</i> | g. <i>to choose</i> |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. You'll have an accident if you continue driving like that.
2. The US has ended diplomatic relations with the regime.
3. I don't think why he should be chosen for special treatment.
4. She removed the empty cups.
5. Do you have these shoes in size 8?" "I'm not sure – I'll just go and ask."
6. *The people I used to spend time with were much older than me.*
7. *Barcelona will be a force to be regarded seriously this season.*

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. You sit down. I'll _____ .
2. Without explanation management _____ contract negotiations.
3. *The principal was certainly a woman to _____.*
4. _____ straight _____ until you get to the traffic light.
5. Our program has been _____ as being particularly good.
6. I'll go and _____ which platform the train leaves from.
7. I've asked them all to stop _____ .

Part 4

1. be around – to be here/there or somewhere in this area

The boss is usually in the office but he doesn't seem to be around at the moment.

2. sign up – to join a group or organization

Kathy signed up for the soccer team this year.

3. calm down – to become quiet and relaxed, after you have been angry, excited, etc.

Calm down, Morgan! Stop jumping around.

4. go through – to experience smth., esp. unpleasant or difficult

She's been going through a difficult time since her divorce.

5. hang over – likely to happen

The threat of nuclear war hangs over mankind.

6. talk over – to discuss (something)

We should get together and talk this over.

7. do away with – to get rid of, destroy

The governor is proposing to do away with the state transportation department.

8. figure out – to think about a problem until you find an answer

I couldn't figure out what they were saying.

Don't worry, we'll figure something out.

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. talk over | a. to destroy |
| 2. figure out | b. to become quiet |
| 3. do away with | c. to experience |
| 4. go through | d. to discuss |
| 5. calm down | e. to be here or there |
| 6. be around | f. likely to happen |
| 7. sign up | g. to think about a problem |
| 8. hang over | h. to join a group |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Harris waited until the audience became quiet before continuing his announcement.
2. Let's get rid of these silly rules.
3. The threat of redundancy was likely to happen to us.
4. Can you understand how to do it?
5. We will not have the picnic unless more people join.
6. Are you going to be here at Christmas or are you going on vacation?
7. Tom discussed his plan with his father before he bought the car.
8. We experienced hell during the flood.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. I can usually _____ my problem with my boss.
2. With the court case _____ us, we couldn't enjoy our vacation.
3. Helen was feeling bored in the evenings so she _____ pottery classes.
4. The teachers want to _____ cheating in their school.
5. Sam couldn't _____ how to print a program.
6. When you're _____ a crisis, it often helps to talk to someone.
7. _____, Morgan! Stop jumping around.
8. What do you mean you can't find the hairdryer. It must _____ somewhere.

C. IDIOMS

Parts 1 – 3

1. **give rise to** something – to cause smth. especially smth. bad or unpleasant

His speech gave rise to a bitter argument.

2. **go out of one's way** – to make a special effort to do smth.

They went out of their way to make me feel welcome.

3. **do smb. good/harm** – to have useful /bad effect , make you feel better / worse

"Come on, let's go to the beach. It'll do you good.

A week in the countryside will do you good.

4. do favors – to do smth. for smb. in order to help

Will you do me a favor and turn the oven on at four o'clock.

5. on hand – close by or ready when needed.

Organizers of the fair have a nurse on hand in case of any injuries

6. have/be smth. to do with – to be connected with smb. or smth.

Most of the articles have to do with America's role in the world since the end of the Cold War.

Was the dispute anything to do with safety regulations?

7. be in the way – if smb. is in your way you can't pass him or pass with difficulties.

I tried to go in the parking lot but the truck was in the way.

on the way – traveling towards a particular place

She should be on the way here by now.

Guess who I bumped into on the way home.

to put it another way – to say or write smth. using words in a particular way

It's fairly risky. Or to put it another way, don't try this at home.

8. lose temper – to become very angry so that you cannot control yourself

I've never seen Vic lose his temper.

As the argument escalated, Faison lost his temper completely.

9. burst into tears – to suddenly start crying

Bridget suddenly burst into tears and ran out.

10. make an impression – to form an idea or opinion of what smb. or smth. is like

It makes a bad impression if you're late for an interview.

11. make things/matters worse – to make a bad situation worse

These new crops are making matters worse destroying traditional agriculture.

Don't tell her you'll only make matters worse.

12. change one's mind – to change your decision, plan, or opinion about smth.

I was afraid that Liz would change her mind and take me back home.

See if you can change your mind about coming with us.

13. in one's own way – in a manner that is typical of a person

I'm sure he does love you, in his own way.

14. on one's own – alone / without anyone's help

I've been living on my own for four years now.

You can't expect him to do it all on his own.

15. for smb's sake – in order to help, improve, or please smb. or smth.

He moved to the seaside for the sake of his health.

I only went for Kay's sake.

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

on the way

went out of her way

in her own way

in the way

to put it another way

1. Jennifer knew what a difficult time I was having, and _____ to be friendly.
2. I ran out of gas _____ to the airport.
3. I'm sorry – am I _____ ? I can move.
4. Each woman dealt with her grief _____ .
5. The liquid dumped in the river was extremely acidic. ____, it's not good for the fish.

2. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

lost his temper

on hand

for his own sake

changed my mind

on my own

has to do with smth.

given rise to

burst into tears

1. At first I thought she was unfriendly, but I've _____ .
2. He _____ when he broke the key in the lock.
3. I can manage _____ , thanks.
4. I hope he's told the truth _____ .
5. My question _____ last week's assignment.

6. Our staff are always _____ to help.
7. The President's absence has _____ speculation about his health.
8. She _____ and told me that Charlie had been killed on the Western Front.

Parts 3 & 4

- 1. make a fool of** – to do smth. stupid that you feel embarrassed about later
deliberately try to make someone seem stupid

People got tired of interviewing him because they felt they were being made fools of.

I know I'm making a fool of myself, but I can't help it.

Why did you try to make a fool of me in public?

- 2. give smb. a piece of one's mind** – to tell smb. what you think esp. when you are angry

I can't believe that they let their dog loose in my garden. If I find the dog in my yard again.

I will give them a piece of my mind.

- 3. make an excuse** – reason you give to explain why you did something wrong

He always made excuses for them, thought up good reasons for their being late.

- 4. take a chance** – to do something that involves risk

She knew she was taking a chance, but she decided to buy the house anyway.

After losing \$20,000 on my last business venture, I'm not taking any chances this time.

- 5. fat chance/not a chance!** – little or no possibility

"Maybe they'll invite you." "Fat chance!"

- 6. keep smb. company** – to stay with people so they are not alone

I kept him company while he was waiting for the bus.

- 7. beyond smb.'s comprehension** – impossible to understand

Some religious truths, he said, are clearly beyond our comprehension.

The Tongass National Forest is big, almost beyond comprehension

- 8. land flat** – to fall on your back

I fell and landed flat at the bottom of the stairs.

9. it (that) would (will) do – good enough for a particular purpose

If you don't have any butter, margarine will do.

10. through/on the grapevine – to hear news from other people

I heard through the grapevine that he's been fired – is it true?

I heard about his resignation on the grapevine.

11. sigh with relief – to stop being worried or frightened about smth.

Once the deadline passed, everyone sighed with relief.

12. in the long run – when something is finished, or at a later time

All our hard work will be worth it in the long run.

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms.

took a chance

give him a piece of my mind

keep you a company

beyond my comprehension

in the long run

through / on the grapevine

fat chance

sighed with relief

landed flat

won't do

1. I'm tired of Jack's excuses. The next time he says he hasn't got time to help,

I'll _____.

2. "Everybody will chip in a couple of dollars." " _____ !"

3. No one was hurt, and we _____.

4. Why you let her talk you into doing such a foolish thing is _____.

5. Victor _____ and set up his own company, which has been very successful.

6. Would you like me stay and _____ ?

7. Sarah had heard _____ that Larry was getting the job.

8. Cutting jobs could be more expensive _____ if we have to hire freelances.

9. I need strong nylon thread. Cotton _____.

10. I tripped over and _____ on my face.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. Modernizing historic buildings often _____ more harm than good.
2. I suddenly realized that I was being _____ a fool of.
3. We thought it would be better to _____ nothing until he could give us more information.
4. You're always _____ excuses for not helping with the housework.
5. It's important to _____ a good impression at your interview.
6. I tried to help, but I think I _____ things worse.
7. Could you _____ me a favor and pick up Sam from school today?
8. I'll _____ you a drink.
9. _____ a left turn at the station.
10. Students are under considerable pressure to _____ well.

D. WORD STUDY

PRESENT – GIFT – REWARD – AWARD

1. present – smth. that you give to smb. on their birthday or on a special occasion

He got a lot of expensive presents for his 21st birthday.

The watch was a present from my mother.

We can't afford to spend much on Christmas presents this year.

2. gift – smth. that you give smb to thank them, especially on a special occasion

The sword was a gift to the Queen from the Sultan of Brunei.

She opened all her birthday gifts after everyone had finished their cake and ice-cream.

Enjoy a free gift with any purchase of \$20 or more.

3. reward – smth. that is given to smb. as thanks for smth. helpful that they have done

There will be a reward of \$50,000 for information that may lead to this man's arrest.

She got no reward for all the hard work she did.

The job is difficult, but the financial rewards are great.

4. award (for) – a prize or other reward/money for smth that smb. has achieved
win/receive/get/be nominated for an **award**

Brian has won several local science awards

Rosie was in London to receive her award as Mum of the Year.

Magnusson presented the £1000 award to the group's chairman.

Students may apply for an award for payment of fees.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. Do you think we will get a _____ for turning in this wallet?
2. I gave her a very special _____ for her birthday.
3. She received a \$700 legal _____ against her ex-landlord.
4. Seeing his children succeed was the most important _____ in his life.
5. In the hall was a magnificent vase, which was a _____ from a Japanese businessman.
6. The parents of the missing boy are offering a _____ of £10,000.
7. The clock was given as a retirement _____ when he left the police.
8. The prize was a just _____ for all his hard work.
9. I'm going to buy a wedding _____ for Chris and Karen.
10. The school has a system of _____ and punishments to encourage good behavior.
12. He was nominated for the best actor _____
13. Several of the parents were giving their children _____ for passing exams.
14. I got this jacket as a _____. I wouldn't have chosen this color myself.
15. The _____ ceremony will be held at the National Film Theatre tonight.
16. Winning the match was just a _____ for the effort the team has made.
17. They also gave out _____ for the funniest person on skis and the person who fell the most.
18. There's a _____ shop in the hotel. They have jewelry and souvenirs and stuff.

LEARN – STUDY – TRAIN

1. learn (about) – you learn how to do things/learn facts, words, numbers/learn about things through your experience

How long have you been learning German?

History is a difficult subject. There are so many dates to learn.

I learnt to drive when I was 17.

If you have a good memory you can learn things by rote, but can you apply it in practice?

On this course, you will learn how to deal with communication problems.

2. study (at/for) – to spend a period of time attending classes at a school or college
to watch and examine something carefully over a period of time
to spend a lot of time examining or considering a plan, document

Stephen is currently studying at Exeter University.

James was studying to be a chartered accountant

I've been studying English for 6 years.

She spent several years studying the behavior of gorillas in Africa.

3. train – to learn the skills necessary to do a particular job

Training to be a doctor is a long and difficult process.

He had trained as a pilot in Texas.

The staff must be trained to use the software correctly.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. After a period of _____ she was taken on to the full-time staff.
2. Anna is _____ French literature.
3. It's difficult to _____ when the weather's so hot.
4. The economics course was useless. I didn't _____ anything new.
5. I've only got three weeks left to _____ for my exams.
6. All employees will be _____ to use the new computer system.
7. With this book, you can _____ all about the history of Africa.
8. The play's next week and she hasn't _____ her lines yet.
9. I can't _____ with that music playing all the time.

10. I doubt if we will ever _____ the truth.
11. Dad thinks I should _____ to be a doctor, but I'm not interested in medicine.
12. I can't go to the movie tonight – I have a big test to _____ for.
13. Her husband _____ to be an auto mechanic, but he can't find a job.
14. What's the best way to _____ a language?
15. We want to encourage people who left school early to _____ for better jobs.
16. A team of scientists has been _____ the effects of acid rain over a twenty-year period.
17. I'm going to try to _____ 12 new words each week.
18. Melanie _____ for a career in music, but switched to photography in her early thirties.

– **TAKE** –

- 1. take aback** – to surprise, shock, startle

I think he was a little taken aback by my response.

- 2. take after** – to look like a relative

She takes after her father: she has the same gestures.

- 3. take for** – to mistake smb./smth. for smb./smth. else

She is always being taken for Elizabeth Taylor though she doesn't really look like her.

- 4. take in** – to trick so. into believing sth that is not true

The man said he was a policeman and I believed him I was completely taken in.

to understand and remember new facts and information

He watches the older kids, just taking it all in.

I'm not going to the next class. I'm too tired to take anything in.

to include

The 'Historic London' tour takes in St Paul's Cathedral and the Tower of London among other attractions.

- 5. take down** – to write smth. down; record smth.

The policeman took down the details of the accident and the addresses of the witnesses.

6. take off – to leave the ground

Did the flight take off?

to remove from service

Some local trains have been taken off, as there was no demand for them.

I took a week off on March and I'm taking Easter off, too.

to increase in number or amount

With the introduction of user-friendly software, home computer sales suddenly took off.

to start to be successful

In 1980, the pop video industry was just taking off.

7. take on – to employ

Is the supermarket taking on any more assistants?

6. take over – to come into control or possession of smth.

Henry's taking over the running of the family business from his father.

8. take to – to start to like smb/smith./ start doing smth. regularly as a habit

Sandra took to it straight away.

Dee's taken to getting up at 6 and going jogging.

9. take up – to discuss/examine smth.

That's an issue we ought to take up at the next meeting.

to begin to pursue hobby, interest, sport

He has taken up sky-diving at the weekend.

to start a new job or have a new responsibility

She takes up her duties as representative for this area next September.

to fill a particular amount of space or time

The equipment is expensive and takes up a lot of space.

I'm sorry to take up so much of your time.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. Internet shopping will really take _____ when people become convinced that it is secure.
2. Can I just take some details _____ ?
3. I rang my boss and arranged to take some time _____ .
4. Roger took painting _____ for a while, but soon lost interest.
5. We're taking _____ 50 new staff this year.
6. Peter will take _____ the management of the finance department.
7. The company had to take this medicine _____ the market because of its side-effects.
8. The head teacher takes her duties _____ in August.
9. It is a typical Burgess novel, taking _____ themes as diverse as Welsh nationalism and metallurgy.
10. A helicopter is able to take _____ and land straight up and down.
11. Sony took _____ CBS Records.
12. The hospital manager has promised to take the matter _____ with the member of staff involved.
13. Her singing career took _____ after an appearance on Johnny Carson's "Tonight" show in America.
14. Don't be taken _____ by products claiming to help you lose weight in a week.
15. The annual report takes _____ nearly 30 pages.
16. Lately he's taken _____ staying up till the middle of the night.
17. She listened attentively, taking _____ every word he said and asking questions.
18. I'm sure he won't mind helping you as long as you don't take _____ much of his time.
19. Even the experts took the painting _____ a genuine Van Gogh.
20. Jenny really takes _____ her mother.

E. REVISION

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. We asked them over for dinner, hoping they would _____ .
A. substitute B. eliminate C. reciprocate D. depreciate
2. The military operation was _____ .
A. terminated B. expelled C. tolerated D. scattered
3. The army was well-trained and well-armed, and had little difficulty _____ the rebels.
A. defeating B. disparaging C. maligning D. reproaching
4. In her _____ room, I have slowly come to feel safe.
A. pernicious B. morose C. serene D. fleeting
5. Students with a _____ in chemistry will probably find the course easier.
A. subject B. superiority C. inferiority D. background
6. Businesses that store hazardous materials must have _____ plans for emergencies.
A. capacity B. contingency C. event D. condition
7. Outbreaks of fighting and lawlessness _____ the New Year celebrations.
A. belittle B. alienated C. marred D. assessed
8. The town has a tiny general store with wildly overpriced _____ .
A. affairs B. merchandise C. faults D. defects
9. This test provides an excellent way of _____ students' progress
A. assessing B. forestalling C. elaborating D. neglecting
10. This may undermine public service and professional values, _____ commercial ones.
A. removing B. substituting C. withdrawing D. cheating
11. Prosecutors suspected from the _____ that Stoner had fled the country.
A. shortcoming B. affair C. outset D. event
12. We tried to explain the causes of the war at a child's level of _____ .
A. predicament B. experience C. history D. comprehension
13. Bower was leading in the polls, but he _____ when the scandal hit the press.
A. separated B. flattered C. punished D. withdrew

14. The freeing of oil prices was _____ until June from the target date of April 1.
 A. postponed B. predicted C. anticipated D. produced
15. She was _____ by colleagues for leaking the story to the press.
 A. reproached B. estimated C. praised D. irritated
16. The House voted to _____ the senator with a formal reprimand.
 A. flatter B. expel C. punish D. estrange
17. 1. Don't _____ his attempts to become a doctor.
 A. spoil B. disparage C. eradicate D. disregard
18. The changes have been greater than we ever _____ .
 A. endured B. defeated C. destroyed D. envisaged
19. Employers _____ the training program by offering places for young people.
 A. defeated B. divided C. supported D. evaluated
20. I caught a _____ glimpse of them as they drove past.
 A. loose B. fleeting C. tranquil D. hilarious
- 21 If you are not a _____ typist do not type your own work.
 A. proficient B. prolific C. obedient D. compliant
22. I'm here in my _____ as a Union Representative.
 A. ability B. capacity C. position D. capability
23. The accident wasn't your _____ ; stop punishing yourself.
 A. fate B. fault C. fake D. feat
24. They were accused of interfering in China's internal _____ .
 A. events B. outskirts C. affairs D. relations
25. Alex is _____ to be an engineer.
 A. revising B. teaching C. learning D. studying

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|------------|-------------|---------------|
| envisage | defeated | outset | frequent | contingency |
| fleeting | postpone | terminated | reproached | comprehension |
| reward | withdraw | supported | merchandise | background |

1. They're offering a _____ for information on the killer.
2. Peter Durham from the city center will address staff on how _____ plans can be properly arranged for Newcastle.
3. It's better to get something in writing right at the _____ .
4. We do not _____ a general election for at least another two years.
5. When Jefferson _____ Adams for the presidency, Adams left town before the inauguration rather than shake hands with him.
6. He _____ himself for not telling her the truth.
7. I am very grateful to members of the faculty who have _____ me in so many ways.
8. Clare had to _____ from the race after injuring her knee.
9. A range of official Disney _____ was on sale.
10. The company had the right to _____ his employment at any time.
11. The task requires a good _____ of complex structures.
12. It's important to understand other people, people from different _____.
13. The proposed launch of the green paper last week was _____ .
14. He made only a _____ reference to his resignation.
15. Dolly was a _____ visitor to the house and there would be long conferences.

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

affairs	disparage	cheating	alienated	competitors
serene	roomy	assessed	proficient	capacity
reward	mar	punished	trained	fault

1. He studied Chinese and became _____ in the language.
2. The company's four major _____ have nothing to rival the new product.
3. I took the ring to a jeweler to have its value _____ .
4. There was no incident to _____ the journey until we ran into that ditch in Rodgers Field.
5. He approached the job with the _____ confidence that he could succeed where others had.

6. In her _____ as war correspondent for ABC News she has traveled all over the world.
7. Why do I always get the blame for things that aren't my _____ ?
8. You need to get your financial _____ in order.
9. Before I _____ as a teacher, I wanted to be a journalist.
10. The new Toyota saloon is both _____ and comfortable.
11. The best _____ for an author is sales.
12. "It pains me to _____ the new library", wrote the architecture critic, "but the building is needlessly ugly."
13. The airline's been accused of _____ its customers out of free bonus flights.
14. Jackson's comments _____ many baseball fans.
15. Janson says she's being _____ for publicly criticizing the department.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. terminate | A. CEASE | B. retaliate | C. penalize | D. foresee |
| 2. cheat | A. wind up | B. scatter | C. defer | D. caboodle |
| 3. competitor | A. flatter | B. hoodwink | C. contestant | D. supporter |
| 4. serene | A. placid | B. woozy | C. restless | D. absurd |
| 5. assess | A. replace | B. eradicate | C. evaluate | D. expel |
| 6. background | A. event | B. condition | C. capacity | D. experience |
| 7. contingency | A. substitution | B. predicament | C. position | D. enmity |
| 8. outset | A. onset | B. task | C. topic | D. reset |
| 9. mar | A. trick | B. calm | C. wrap up | D. spoil |
| 10. merchandise | A. supply | B. matter | C. commodity | D. sophistry |
| 11. disparage | A. attach | B. malign | C. disentangle | D. disrupt |
| 12. reproach | A. reprieve | B. retaliate | C. reprimand | D. remove |
| 13. fleeting | A. transient | B. yielding | C. compliant | D. obedient |
| 14. flatter | A. rebuke | B. brown nose | C. estrange | D. separate |
| 15. envisage | A. disunite | B. estimate | C. anticipate | D. damage |
| 16. comprehension | A. awareness | B. atmosphere | C. emergency | D. disquisition |

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| 17. support | A. reciprocate | B. ignore | C. advocate | D. disregard |
| 18. withdraw | A. fail | B. fake | C. slide | D. quit |
| 19. defeat | A. conquer | B. dispense | C. malign | D. rate |
| 20. loose | A. gloomy | B. scattered | C. versed | D. adept |

5. Choose the word opposite in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. morose | A. depressed | B. cheerful | C. disgraced | D. deprived |
| 2. disparage | A. depreciate | B. placate | C. praise | D. erase |
| 3. submissive | A. obedient | B. rebellious | C. yielding | D. compliant |
| 4. pernicious | A. tranquil | B. beneficial | C. malicious | D. hilarious |
| 5. offensive | A. evanescent | B. annoying | C. careless | D. polite |
| 6. serenity | A. disturbance | B. placidity | C. emergency | D. enmity |
| 7. support | A. eliminate | B. back | C. include | D. assist |
| 8. terminate | A. cease | B. estimate | C. finish | D. begin |
| 9. withdraw | A. drop out | B. remove | C. advance | D. wind up |
| 10. ridiculous | A. hilarious | B. sensible | C. unpleasant | D. spiteful |
| 11. defeat | A. return | B. overcome | C. support | D. surrender |
| 12. loose | A. spacious | B. extensive | C. messy | D. tight |
| 13. outset | A. end | B. start | C. crib | D. fate |
| 14. frequent | A. rare | B. irrelevant | C. common | D. regular |
| 15. alienate | A. separate | B. unite | C. annoy | D. arouse |

PHRASAL VERBS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

- Peter had lost his job, and the family was _____ a very difficult time.
- When we _____ the price we were shocked.
- The new surgeon will _____ her post in June.
- Some economists have _____ that low inflation is not necessarily a good thing.
- As Gary can't get a job he _____ Unemployment Training.

6. Do you think he will _____ his threat to cut our salaries?
7. People thought that the use of robots will _____ boring low-paid factory jobs.
8. He is very good at _____ people he doesn't like.
8. Don't worry we'll _____ something _____ .
10. The dish has been _____ the menu.
11. We need to meet and _____ the whole thing _____ .
12. We've _____ milk. Could you stop at the store on your way home?
13. The table _____ too much room.
14. It's hard to _____ a business and take care of a small child at the same time.
15. In the wake of the bombing, the UK is threatening to _____ diplomatic relations.
16. Homeowners are _____ brush near their houses to prevent fires.
17. IBM is _____ a smaller company.
18. Who _____ this clever plan?
19. Any invader would have the military might of NATO to _____ .
20. Great trouble _____ the little town because its only factory has closed down.

IDIOMS

7. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. He didn't want to be left _____ .
2. I _____ the party. I was home that night.
3. Fred tried to get to the door but the table _____ .
4. The train left and Bill was _____ to New York.
5. John knew that he could make a success of the little weekly paper _____ .
6. We'll _____ on the weather and have a party outdoors.
7. A high school team would have a _____ of beating a strong college team.
8. _____ he really is trying to help.
9. I tried to help but I think I _____ .
10. I heard _____ that you are leaving.
11. His behavior was completely _____ .

12. Don didn't like Charles, and he _____ to say bad things about him.
13. When the plane finally landed, we all _____ .
14. The sergeant _____ the soldier _____ for not cleaning his boots.
15. Daily shaving can _____ a number of skin problems.
16. A few sandwiches _____ me for lunch.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *im-*, *un-*, *dis-*, *ir-*, *mis-*.

___convenient	___avoidable	___behave	___available
___dependent	___solicited	___formal	___relevant
___polite	___prepared	___reliable	___pleasant
___secure	___expensive	___satisfied	___helpful

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. He scheduled the meeting for an _____ time, and few people could attend.
2. The customs officials were impatient, rude, and _____ .
3. Now that Jean's got a job, she's financially _____ .
4. The stairs seemed kind of rickety and _____ .
5. There are now fears that war is _____ .
6. The study showed that 50% of the students were _____ for work or college.
7. Her comments seemed _____ to the real issue.
8. The atmosphere at work is fairly _____ .
9. Many common medicines are _____ in the country.
10. Local telephone service is _____ .
11. We hope to attract customers who are _____ with their present health insurance.
12. We have seen that a contract made during an _____ visit is cancelable.
13. Kids often _____ when they are bored or tired.
14. It is _____ not to eat what you are served at a dinner party.

15. Then Nel lost her temper and there was an extremely _____ scene in Kenwood's office.

16. The furniture is _____ but well-made.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. Rex and I looked at one another _____ amazement.

2. I bought these jeans _____ half price in the sale.

3. A person with higher qualifications can get a better paid job _____ of their career.

4. Sorry we are _____ that wall paper at the moment.

5. I'm _____ to work.

6. Several companies have produced pension plans for people _____ the higher tax bracket.

7. I tried to go into the parking lot, but there was a big dump truck _____ .

8. He is in trouble _____ the police.

9. Since I am new _____ the area, I was pleased to have the opportunity to meet people.

10. Scientists still haven't found a cure _____ the common cold.

11. His leg is _____ a cast.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. He publicly reproached his son _____ his behavior.

2. I am satisfied _____ the program we are making.

3. I'm disappointed _____ you.

4. I'm disappointed _____ not getting a job.

5. Tom and Mary argued _____ money.

6. They were amazed _____ his brilliance.

7. They were astonished _____ her rudeness.

8. They insisted _____ playing their music late at night.

9. We are really looking forward _____ seeing you again.

10. Everybody laughs _____ my accent.
11. France won by six goals to two _____ Denmark.
12. She works _____ an engineering company.
13. He threw the ball _____ someone in the crowd.
14. Stop throwing stones _____ the window.
15. Skin exposed _____ sun should be covered with protective cream.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. I waved to Karen but failed _____ (attract) her attention.
2. I promised not _____ (be) late.
3. I'm looking forward to _____ (go) on holiday.
4. It's not worth _____ (take) a taxi.
5. I didn't expect _____ (pass) the exam.
6. It's too early _____ (leave) the party.
7. He explained how _____ (operate) the machine.
8. The wind tends _____ (increase) just before sunset.
9. She offered _____ (do) the washing up.
10. There is enough food _____ (go) round.
11. I'll help you _____ (arrange) the party if you like.
12. We don't envisage _____ (live) in this area for very long.
13. I refuse _____ (answer) any more questions.
14. I keep _____ (think) I've seen her somewhere before.
15. The agency said it will delay _____ (mail) tax forms until after New Year's Day.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of say or tell.

1. Could you _____ me your name please?
2. I _____ to John that he had to work harder.
3. She left without _____ goodbye.
4. The brochure _____ us the details of hotel accommodation in the area.

5. I'd like to _____ a few words.
6. She _____ us some funny stories about her sister.
7. He _____ that the grass needed cutting.
8. He looked as if he was going to _____ something.
9. Ann _____ me that you are moving to Canada.
10. She _____ Mr. Brown that she would be late for the meeting.
11. The law _____ that no-one under the age of 16 can buy a lottery ticket.
12. She is only five – she hasn't learnt to _____ the time yet.

7. Turn the sentences into reported statements.

1. He said, "I can't afford to waste my time."

2. He said, "I think you speak English very well."

3. They said, "We have already seen this film"

4. He said, "I'm going to be late for the class."

5. He said, "I might go to the party on Sunday."

6. He said, "You must finish by 2:30."

7. He said, "I'll meet you after class for a cup of coffee."

8. He said, "Carol arrived on Monday."

9. They said, "We are planning to take a trip in July."

10. He said, "I should leave at 5:30"

11. He said, "I may have time later."

12. He said, "I don't consider a career in business."

8. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. He asked, "Does your father work in a bank?"

2. He asked, "Do they speak English?"

3. He asked, "Is there any food in the house?"

4. He asked, "Am I doing the right thing?"

5. He asked, "Will you be ready in time?"

6. He asked, "Has she arrived in town yet?"

7. He asked, "Did you move into a new apartment?"

8. He asked, "Are you going to take another English course?"

9. He asked, "Can you pay in advance?"

10. He asked, "Did you come on time?"

11. He asked, "Is service included?"

12. He asked, "Can I call Friday night?"

9. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. He asked, "When is the new manager coming?"

2. He asked, "Why are all the windows open?"

3. He asked, "How many books does he want?"

4. He asked, "When did you arrive?"

5. He asked, "How long are you going to stay?"

6. He asked, "When will you get back from your holiday?"

7. He asked, "Why did you change your mind about going to college?"

8. He asked, "When do you plan to go to China?"

9. He asked, "Where are you from?"

10. He asked, "Why didn't you tell me the truth?"

11. He asked, "What experience do you have?"

12. He asked, "What time did the accident occur?"

10. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. He said, "It will be difficult time for all of us?"

2. He asked, "Do you have the same cell phone number?"

3. He asked, "What time is she meeting them?"

4. He said, "You won't pass the exam."

5. He said, "It is raining."

6. He asked, "Can I pay by check?"

7. He asked, "Do you have time to help me?"

8. He asked, "How does he know my name?"

9. He asked, "When did she graduate?"

10. He said, "I wrote you a note."

11. He said, "I must write a report."

12. He asked, "When are you leaving?"

11. Underline the correct linking word / phrase.

1. A new security system was installed. In addition / as well, extra guards were hired.
2. You will be paid overtime in addition to / moreover your regular salary.
3. Our vacation was a disaster: the food was terrible, the weather was awful both / as well.
4. The drug has powerful side effects. Moreover / both, it can be addictive.
5. I wanted to help her out. Besides / as well as I needed the money.
6. Francois speaks perfect English. He also / as well speaks German and Italian.
7. Meissner was not only commander of the army but also / as well a close friend of the President.

8. Besides / in addition going to aerobics twice a week, she rides horses on Saturdays.
9. She is a community worker, moreover / as well as a fully qualified nurse.
10. Donny plays both football and / as well as baseball.

12. Underline the correct linking word / phrase.

1. Tom's grandfather is over 80, but / though he plays golf.
2. Although / Nevertheless the car's old, it still runs well.
3. I was in terrible pain after my fall. However / On the other hand I carried on walking.
4. I still look fat, even though / yet I've been exercising fairly regularly.
5. My car looks old and ugly. Although / Still, it's better than having no car at all.
6. I think she is Swiss. I'm not sure still / though.
7. The Sharks played with two men in the penalty box. Nevertheless / Even though they managed to score.
8. The sun was shining, yet / on the other hand it was quite cold.
9. This is a wonderful opportunity to make a lot of money. Even / On the other hand there are risks involved.
10. Though / However she was no more than twenty-two, she was already a highly successful businesswoman.

13. Join the ideas, using the correct words / phrases in brackets.

1. Our survey will produce the essential statistics. It will provide information people's shopping habits. (In addition / However)

2. Sugar is bad for your teeth. It can contribute to heart disease. (also / yet)

3. He was feeling bad. He went to work and tried to concentrate. (Besides / However)

4. She was tired. She stayed up to watch the late night movie. (Although / Furthermore)

5. Using language is a very complex enterprise. There is more to communication than merely putting sentences together. (On the other hand / Moreover)

6. Our defeat was expected. It is disappointing. (Nevertheless / Also)

7. They charge incredibly high prices. Customers keep coming back for more. (yet / in addition)

8. She is a talented musician. She is a photographer. (although / as well as)

9. It'll cost us over %300 to go by bus. That's a lot cheaper than the airfare. (Also / Still)

10. Julia often feels homesick. She likes working in India and plans to stay. (but / as well)

11. Teachers have normal teaching duties. They have stacks of paperwork to do.
(In addition to / Although)

12. He got the job. He had no qualification. (Furthermore / Although)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

Part 1

1. What were the Klausners like?
2. What kind of house did they have?
3. Why did they never run out of gas?
4. Who was Harvey? What did he look like? What was he good at?
5. How are they prepared for power failure? What advice do they give to their neighbors?

Part 2

1. What kind of party did the Klausners have?

2. What custom did people in this neighborhood have?
3. What did they talk about at the party?
4. Why did Estelle feel uncomfortable?

Part 3

1. Why did Estell want to return the jacket?
2. What advice did Emily give to her classmates?
3. Why did Berenice have her hair streaked?
4. How did it affect her?
5. What inconveniences resulted from their decision to break off with the Klausners?

Part 4

1. What kind of competition did they arrange?
2. What was the reward in Michael's age group? / in adult group?
3. Why did Berenice, Estelle and Joseph stay at home?
4. Who won in Michael's age group?
5. What food did the Klausners bring?
6. How did they find a new house?
7. How was the new house different from their old house?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

Part 1

1. What is the meaning of the title as it relates to the plot of the story?
2. Why did Klausners cause a sense of inferiority in the author's family?
3. Why would Michael lose his temper during Harvey's visits?
4. What does Leonard Tushnet mean when he writes that Klausners should be spelt with a small *k* ?

Part 2

1. How did Estelle feel when Myra complimented her on her jacket?
2. Why were the Klausners masters of 'put down'?
3. Why did Estelle want to make an impression?

Part 3

1. What was the real reason why Estelle wanted to return the jacket?
2. Why did she never invite the Klausners to come over to their place?
3. Why did Emily not have her hair streaked?
4. Why did the author's family break off their relations with the Klausners?

Part 4

1. Why did Michael withdraw from the competition?
2. Why was he disappointed with the competition results?
3. Why did the author's family decide to move?
4. What does the author mean when he says "Klausners are Klausners"?
5. Why does the author say "It would have been better for me to pay a commission"?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Make a chart and list each character qualities /habits. Then give examples of their behavior.

Character	Qualities/ Habits	Behavior/Event
Klausners	helpful	They go out of their way to do you good/send over a dozen of candles when the power fails/do favors
	farsighted	
		they knew where the knitting mall had a discount outlet, how to flatter a teacher, why dinosaurs became extinct
	aggressive	
Herman	helpful	

		He tasted martini made by the guests, said they were no good and mixed another batch in substitution
Myra	puts down points out errors	
	proficient	
		She offered to give Estelle the recipe
Emily		She gave advice on eyeliner and earrings.
	independent	
	helpful	
Harvey	proficient	
Gerald		good at figure-skating

2. Think of some examples of cause-and-effect relationship in this story. Then complete the following chart.

Cause	Effect
1. Myra made some remarks about Estelle's jacket.	1.
2.	2. Berenice developed a school phobia
3. Gerald taught Joseph figure skating.	3.

4.	4. Michael was upset. He slapped the golden pin from his father's hand.
5.	5.
6.	6.
7.	7.

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Discuss the relationship between Michael and Harvey. Find sentences in the story to support your opinion.
2. Discuss the girls' attitude to Emily.
3. Give examples from the story, which show that the Klausners were versatile, independent, foresighted, helpful.
4. Give examples from the story, which show that the Klausners aroused hostility in the author's family.
5. Give reasons why the author describes the Klausners as pernicious.
6. Give examples from the story which show which show the change in the author's family attitude to the Klausners.

7. 'I fear the Greeks even when they bring gifts' – Virgil, 'Aeneid'. How does this apply to the story you have read?

E. WRITING

1. Write a short paragraph describing qualities that the Kalusners have in common. Give examples to support your answer.
2. Compare and contrast the author's family and the Klausners in character and behavior.
3. Pretend to be Estelle. Write a letter to a friend describing a party.
4. Write a short paragraph describing the events during swimming competition.

UNIT II

THE ANGEL OF THE BRIDGE

John Cheever

PART 1

You may have seen my mother waltzing on ice skates in Rockefeller Center. She's seventy-eight years old now but very wiry, and she wears a red velvet costume with a short skirt. Her tights are flesh-colored, and she wears spectacles and a red ribbon in her white hair, and she waltzes with one of the rink attendants. I don't know why I should find the fact that she waltzes on ice skates so disconcerting, but I do.

I avoid that neighborhood whenever I can during the winter months, and I never lunch in the restaurants on the rink. Once when I was passing that way, a total stranger took me by the arm and, pointing to Mother, said, "Look at that crazy old dame." I was very embarrassed. I suppose I should be grateful for the fact that she amuses herself and is not a burden to me, but I sincerely wish she had hit on some less conspicuous recreation. Whenever I see gracious old ladies arranging crysanthemums and pouring tea, I think of my own mother, dressed like a hat-check girl, pushing some paid rink attendant around the ice, in the middle of the third-biggest city of the world.

My mother learned to figure-skate in the little New England village of St. Botolphs, where we come from, and her waltzing is an expression of her attachment to the past. The older she grows, the more she longs for the vanishing and provincial world of her youth. She is a hardy woman, as you can imagine, but she does not relish change.

I arranged one summer for her to fly to Toledo and visit friends. I drove her to the Newark airport. She seemed troubled by the airport waiting room, with its illuminated advertisements, vaulted ceiling, and touching and painful scenes of separation played out to an uproar of continuous tango music. She did not seem to find it in any way interesting or beautiful, and compared to the railroad station in St. Botolphs it was indeed a strange background against which to take one's departure. The flight was delayed for an hour, and we sat in the waiting room. Mother looked tired and old. When we had been waiting half an hour, she began to have some noticeable difficulty in breathing. She spread a hand over the front of her dress and began to gasp deeply, as if she was in pain. Her face got mottled and red. I pretended not to notice this. When the plane was announced, she got to her feet and exclaimed,

"I want to go home! If I have to die suddenly, I don't want to die in a flying machine."

I cashed in her ticket and drove her back to her apartment, and I have never mentioned this seizure to her or to anyone, but her capricious, or perhaps neurotic, fear of dying in a plane crash was the first insight I had into how, as she grew older, her way was strewn with invisible rocks and lions and how eccentric were the paths she took, as the world seemed to change its boundaries and become less and less comprehensible.

At the time of which I'm writing, I flew a great deal myself. My business was in Rome, New York, San Francisco, and Los Angeles, and I sometimes traveled as often as once a month between these cities. I liked the flying. I liked the incandescence of the sky at high altitudes. I liked all eastward flights where you can see from the ports the edge of night move over the continent and where, when it is four o'clock by your California watch, the housewives of Garden City are washing up the supper dishes and the stewardess in the plane is passing a second round of drinks. I liked to fly, as I say, and had none of my mother's anxieties.

It was my older brother – her darling – who was to inherit her resoluteness, her

stubbornness, her table silver, and some of her eccentricities. One evening, my brother – I had not seen him for a year or so – called and asked if he could come for dinner. I was happy to invite him. We live on the eleventh floor of an apartment house, and at seven-thirty he telephoned from the lobby and asked me to come down. I thought he must have something to tell me privately, but when we met in the lobby he got into the automatic elevator with me and we started up. As soon as the doors closed, he showed the same symptoms of fear I had seen in my mother. Sweat stood out on his forehead, and he gasped like a runner.

"What in the world is the matter?" I asked.

"I'm afraid of elevators," he said miserably.

"But what are you afraid of?"

"I'm afraid the building will fall down." I laughed – cruelly, I guess.

For it all seemed terribly funny, his vision of the buildings of New York banging against one another like ninepins as they fell to the earth. There has always been a strain of jealousy in our feelings about one another, and I am aware, at some obscure level, that he makes more money and has more of everything than I, and to see him humiliated – crushed – saddened me but at the same time and in spite of myself made me feel that I had taken a stunning lead in the race for honors that is at the bottom of our relationship. He is the oldest, he is the favorite, but watching his misery in the elevator I felt that he was merely my poor old brother, overtaken by his worries. He stopped in the hallway to recover his composure, and explained that he had been suffering from this phobia for over a year. He was going to a psychiatrist, he said. I couldn't see that it had done him any good. He was all right once he got out of the elevator, but I noticed that he stayed away from the windows. When it was time to go, I walked him out to the corridor. I was curious. When the elevator reached our floor, he turned to me and said, "I'm afraid I'll have to take the stairs." I led him to the stairway, and we climbed slowly down the eleven flights. He clung to the railing. We said goodbye in the lobby, and I went up in the elevator, and told my wife about his fear that the building might fall down. It seemed strange and sad to her, and it did to me, too, but it also seemed terribly funny.

It wasn't terribly funny when, a month later, the firm he worked for moved to the fifty-second floor of a new office building and he had to resign. I don't know what reasons he gave. It was another six months before he could find a job in a third-floor office. I once saw him on a winter dusk at the corner of Madison Avenue and Fifty-ninth Street, waiting for the light to change. He appeared to be an intelligent, civilized, and well-dressed man, and I wondered how many of the men waiting with him to cross the street made their way as he did through a ruin of absurd delusions, in which the street might appear to be a torrent and the approaching cab driven by the angel of death. He was quite all right on the ground. My wife and I went to his house in New Jersey, with the children, for a weekend, and he looked healthy and well. I didn't ask about his phobia.

PART 2

We drove back to New York on Sunday afternoon. As we approached the George Washington Bridge, I saw a thunderstorm over the city. A strong wind struck the car the moment we were on the bridge, and nearly took the wheel out of my hand.

It seemed to me that I could feel the huge structure swing. Halfway across the bridge, I thought I felt the roadway begin to give. I could see no signs of a collapse, and yet I was convinced that in another minute the bridge would split in two and hurl the long lines of Sunday traffic into the dark water below us. This imagined disaster was terrifying. My legs got so weak that I was not sure I could brake the car if I needed to. Then it became difficult for me to breathe. Only by opening my mouth and gasping did I seem able to take in any air. My blood pressure was affected and I began to feel a darkening of my vision. Once over the center of the bridge, my pain and terror began to diminish. My wife and the children were admiring the storm, and they did not seem to have noticed my spasm. I was afraid both that the bridge would fall down and that they might observe my panic.

I thought back over the weekend for some incident that might account for my preposterous fear that the George Washington Bridge would blow away in a thunderstorm, but it had been a pleasant weekend, and even under the most exaggerated scrutiny I couldn't uncover any source of morbid nervousness or anxiety.

Later in the week, I had to drive to Albany, and, although the day was clear and windless, the memory of my first attack was too keen; I hugged the east bank of the river as far north as Troy where I found a small, old-fashioned bridge that I could cross comfortably. This meant going fifteen or twenty miles out of my way, and it is humiliating to have your travels obstructed by barriers that are senseless and invisible. I drove back from Albany by the same route, and next morning I went to the family doctor and told him I was afraid of bridges.

He laughed. "You, of all people," he said scornfully. "You'd better take hold of yourself."

"But Mother is afraid of airplanes," I said. "And Brother hates elevators."

"Your mother is past seventy," he said, "and one of the most remarkable women I've ever known. I wouldn't bring her into this. What you need is a little more backbone."

This was all he had to say, and I asked him to recommend an analyst. He does not include psychoanalysis in medical science, and told me I would be wasting my time and money, but, yielding to his obligation to be helpful, he gave me the name and address of a psychiatrist, who told me that my fear of bridges was the surface manifestation of a deep-seated anxiety and that I would have to have a full analysis. I didn't have the time, or the money, or, above all, the confidence in the doctor's methods to put myself in his hands, and I said I would try and muddle through.

There are obviously areas of true and false pain, and my pain was meretricious, but how could I convince my lights and vitals of this? My youth and childhood had their deeply troubled and their jubilant years, and could some repercussions from this past account for my fear of heights? The thought of a life determined by hidden obstacles was unacceptable, and I decided to take the advice of the family doctor and ask more of myself.

I had to go to Idlewild later in the week, and, rather than take a bus or a taxi, I drove the car myself. I nearly lost consciousness on the Triborough Bridge. When I got to the airport I ordered a cup of coffee, but my hand was shaking so I spilled the coffee on the counter. The man beside me was amused and said that I must have put

in quite a night. How could I tell him that I had gone to bed early and sober but that I was afraid of bridges?

I flew to Los Angeles late that afternoon. It was one o'clock by my watch when we landed. It was only ten o'clock in California. I was tired and took a taxi to the hotel where I always stay, but I couldn't sleep. I remembered that I was to go to San Francisco on Thursday, and was expected in Berkeley for lunch. This meant crossing the San Francisco – Oakland Bay Bridge, and I reminded myself to take a cab both ways and leave the car I rented in San Francisco in the hotel garage. I tried again to reason out my fear that the bridge would fall. Looking at Sunset Boulevard at three in the morning, I felt that my terror of bridges was an expression of my clumsily concealed horror of what is becoming of the world. I can drive with composure through the outskirts of Cleveland and Toledo – past the birthplace of the Polish Hot Dog, the Buffalo Burger stands, the used-car lots, and the architectural monotony. I claim to enjoy walking down Hollywood Boulevard on a Sunday afternoon. But I hate freeways and Buffalos Burgers. Expatriated palm trees and monotonous housing developments depress me. The continuous music on special-fare trains exacerbates my feelings. I detest the destruction of familiar landmarks, I am deeply troubled by the misery and drunkenness I find among my friends, I abhor the dishonest practices I see. And it was at the highest point in the arc of a bridge that I became aware suddenly of the depth and bitterness of my feelings about modern life, and of the profoundness of my yearning for a more vivid, simple, and peaceable world.

But I couldn't reform Sunset Boulevard, and until I could, I couldn't drive across the San Francisco – Oakland Bay Bridge. What could I do? Go back to St. Botolphs, wear a Norfolk jacket, and play cribbage in the firehouse? There was only one bridge in the village, and you could throw a stone across the river there. I got home from San Francisco on Saturday, and found my daughter back from school for the weekend.

PART 3

On Sunday morning, she asked me to drive her to the convent school in Jersey where she is a student. She had to be back in time for nine-o'clock Mass, and we left our

apartment in the city a little after seven. We were talking and laughing, and I had approached and was in fact on the George Washington Bridge without having remembered my weakness. There were no preliminaries this time. The seizure came with a rush. The strength went out of my legs. I gasped for breath, and felt the terrifying loss of sight. I was, at the same time, determined to conceal these symptoms from my daughter. I made the other side of the bridge, but I was violently shaken. My daughter didn't seem to have noticed. I got her to school in time, kissed her goodbye, and started home.

There was no question of any crossing the George Washington Bridge again, and I decided to drive north to Nyack and cross on the Tappan Zee Bridge. It seemed, in my memory, more gradual and more securely anchored to its shores. Driving up the parkway on the west shore, I decided that oxygen was what I needed, and I opened all the windows of the car. The fresh air seemed to help, but only momentarily. I had some friends in the neighborhood, and I thought of stopping and asking them for a drink, but it was only a little after nine in the morning and I could not face the embarrassment of asking for a drink so early in the day, and of explaining that I was afraid of bridges. I thought I might feel better if I talked to someone and I stopped at a gas station and bought some gas, but the attendant was laconic and sleepy, and I couldn't explain to him that his conversation might make the difference between life and death. I had got onto the Thruway by then, and I wondered what alternatives I had if I couldn't cross the bridge.

I could call my wife and ask her to make some arrangements for removing me, but our relationship involves so much self-esteem and face that to admit openly to this foolishness might damage our married happiness. I could call the garage we use and ask them to send up a man to chauffeur me home. I could park the car and wait until one o'clock, when the bars opened, and fill up on whiskey, but I had spent the last of my money for gasoline. I decided to take a chance, and turned onto the approach to the bridge.

All the symptoms returned, and this time they were much worse than ever. The wind was knocked out of my lungs as by a blow. My equilibrium was so shaken that the car swerved from one lane into another. I drove to the side and pulled on the hand

brake. The loneliness of my predicament was harrowing. I remembered my brother's face, sallow and greasy with sweat in the elevator, and my mother in her red skirt, one leg held gracefully aloft as she coasted backward in the arms of a rink attendant, and it seemed to me that we were all three characters in some bitter and sordid tragedy, carrying impossible burdens and separated from the rest of mankind by our misfortunes. My life was over, and it would never come back, everything that I loved – blue-sky courage, lustiness, the natural grasp of things. It would never come back. I would end up in the psychiatric ward of the county hospital, screaming that the bridges, all the bridges in the world, were falling down.

Then a young girl opened the door of the car and got in. "I didn't think anyone would pick me up on the bridge," she said. She carried a cardboard suitcase and – believe me – a small harp in a cracked waterproof. Her straight light-brown hair was brushed and grained with blondness and spread in a kind of cape over her shoulders. Her face seemed full and merry.

"Are you hitchhiking?" I asked.

"Yes."

"But isn't it dangerous for a girl your age?"

"Not at all."

"Do you travel much?"

"All the time. I sing a little. I play the coffee-houses."

"What do you sing?"

"Oh, folk music, mostly. And some old things – Purcell and Dowland. But mostly folk music... 'I gave my love a cherry that had no stone'," she sang in a true and pretty voice. "I gave my love a chicken that had no bone, I told my love a story that had no end, I gave my love a baby with no crying."

She sang me across a bridge that seemed to be an astonishingly sensible, durable, and even beautiful construction designed by intelligent men to simplify my travels, and the water of the Hudson below us was charming and tranquil. It all came back – blue-sky courage, the high spirits of lustiness, and ecstatic serenity. Her song ended as we got to the toll station on the east bank, and she thanked me, said

goodbye, and got out of the car. I offered to take her wherever she wanted to go, but she shook her head and walked away, and I drove on toward the city through a world that, having been restored to me, seemed marvelous and fair. When I got home, I thought of calling my brother and telling him what had happened, on the chance that there was also an angel of the elevator banks, but the harp – that single detail – threatened to make me seem ridiculous or mad, and I didn't call.

I wish I could say that I am convinced that there will always be some merciful intercession to help me with my worries, but I don't believe in rushing my luck, so I will stay off the George Washington Bridge, although I can cross the Triborough and the Tappan Zee with ease. My brother is still afraid of elevators, and my mother, although she's grown quite stiff, still goes around and around and around on the ice.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. disconcerting – making you feel slightly confused, worried, or embarrassed:

Waters asked a few disconcerting questions.

2. embarrassed – ashamed, nervous, or uncomfortable, especially in front of others

The chair broke when Tim sat on it - he was pretty embarrassed.

3. burden – a duty or responsibility that is hard to bear

I don't want to be a burden on my children.

We need to reduce the tax burden of middle-income Americans

4. conspicuous – easily noticed; obvious

He was conspicuous as usual with a big yellow bow tie.

5. recreation – an activity that you do for pleasure or fun

Sarah's favorite recreation is shopping for antiques.

6. attachment – a strong feeling of being emotionally close to smb. or smth.

She had a special attachment to these students.

7. long (for) – to want smth. very much, esp. when it seems unlikely to happen soon

She longed to move out of the city.

He longed for the good old days when teachers were shown respect.

8. vanish – to disappear or stop existing, esp. suddenly

Her smile vanished.

Before she could scream, the man had vanished into the night.

9. relish – to like or enjoy (something)

I enjoyed our vacation, but didn't relish the twenty-hour trip.

10. arrange – to organize or make plans for smth. such as a meeting, party, or trip

He arranged a meeting between the two leaders.

Jessica arranged to pick us up.

Peter arranged for a friend to drive him there.

11. background – things happening around you but not involving you directly

The elections are taking place against a background of widespread unemployment.

12. departure – an act of leaving a place, especially to travel in an airplane, car etc.

You should be at the airport an hour before departure.

Departure is scheduled for 2 p.m.

13. delay – to wait until a later time to do something

The agency said it will delay mailing tax forms until after New Year's Day.

Our departure was delayed because of bad weather.

14. notice – to see, hear, or feel someone or something

The lifeguard didn't notice that a boy was having trouble in the pool.

15. seizure – a sudden condition which you cannot control

One of the restaurant customers suffered an epileptic seizure.

16. boundary – an edge or limit of something

The Mississippi River forms a natural boundary between Iowa and Illinois.

National boundaries are becoming increasingly meaningless in the global economy.

17. comprehensible – easy to understand

Most avant-garde music is not comprehensible to the average concertgoer.

18. a great/good deal of – a large quantity or amount of something

I've spent a good deal of time thinking about the project.

He knows a great deal more about computers than I do.

19. anxiety – a feeling of worry about smth. that is happening or might happen

People's anxiety about the economy is increasing.

For many children, every new school year causes anxiety.

20. inherit – to receive money, property etc. from smb. after they have died
to get a quality, appearance etc. from one of your parents

He inherited a fortune from his grandmother.

I inherited my mother's curly hair.

21. resolute – determined

He became even more resolute in his opposition to the plan.

22. be aware – knowing that smth. exists, or having knowledge of a particular thing

They were well aware that the company was losing money.

Mr. Braley has been made aware of the need for absolute secrecy.

23. humiliate – to make smb. feel ashamed or lose their respect for themselves

They called him an old fool in public just to humiliate him.

24. overtake – to have a strong effect

He was overtaken by exhaustion.

She was overtaken by emotion and started to cry.

25. cling (clung, clung) – to hold smb. or smth. tightly, esp. because you do not feel safe

Passengers clung desperately onto the lifeboats.

26. resign – officially and permanently leave your job or position because you want to

He resigned from the committee.

27. phobia (about) – a strong unreasonable fear of something

I have a real phobia about going to places where I don't know anyone.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. clear, intelligible, coherent

2. worry, fear, uneasiness, nervousness

3. like, prefer, enjoy, delight in

4. clear, apparent, evident, distinct, discernable _____
5. devotion, faithfulness, liking, affection, loyalty _____
6. disappear, become invisible, fade, evanesce _____
7. quit, leave, retire, give up _____
8. postpone, put off, defer _____
9. want, desire, yearn for, wish _____
10. discredit, lower, put down, shame, disgrace _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Kyoto is a city I have always _____ to visit.
 A. noticed B. longed C. vanished D. embarrassed
2. Our flight was _____ by bad weather.
 A. noticed B. overtaken C. discredited D. delayed
3. She _____ from the board after profits fell by a further 3%.
 A. deferred B. cleared C. resigned D. inherited
4. The reporter seemed to _____ asking all those personal questions.
 A. yearn for B. cling C. relish D. fade
5. There is considerable _____ among staff about job losses.
 A. anxiety B. attachment C. seizure D. delay
6. I've never felt so _____ in all my life.
 A. conspicuous B. evident C. aware D. humiliated
7. I thought I saw a mouse under the bed but when I looked it had _____ .
 A. vanished B. gave up C. retired D. lowered
8. Each entry in the guide is brief and immediately _____ .
 A. discernable B. comprehensible C. disconcerting D. desirable
9. The notice must be displayed in a _____ place.
 A. conspicuous B. invisible C. coherent D. loyal
10. He felt a particular _____ to his father's family.
 A. anxiety B. disgrace C. phobia D. attachment

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

delay long for anxiety humiliate attachment
relish vanish resign conspicuous comprehensible

1. Visual aids can make lessons much more interesting and _____ .
2. I felt very _____ in my red coat.
3. She _____ the chance to speak to him in private.
4. He wants to _____ the meeting until Wednesday.
5. Many workers have little _____ to their companies.
6. Nixon was the first US President to _____ before the end of his term of office.
7. She clearly _____ the prospect of breaking the news to them.
8. There is growing public _____ over levels of air pollution in our cities.
9. Minority groups have been abused, _____ and insulted in their struggle for equality.
10. In the darkness Nick saw a strange light appear and then _____ .

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. **vanish** A. retire B. disappear C. quit D. defer
2. **relish** A. enjoy B. evanesce C. overtake D. give up
3. **anxiety** A. wish B. burden C. shame D. worry
4. **comprehensible** A. invisible B. loyal C. clear D. evident
5. **conspicuous** A. faithful B. distinct C. coherent D. uneasy
6. **humiliate** A. yearn for B. discredit C. shame D. fade
7. **attachment** A. background B. phobia C. devotion D. seizure
8. **long** A. put off B. notice C. desire D. cling
9. **delay** A. arrange B. embarrass C. delight in D. postpone
10. **resign** A. leave B. want C. inherit D. put down

Part 2

1. **approach** – to move toward or nearer to someone or something

As I approached the house, I noticed a light on upstairs.

2. collapse -- falling down (about buildings, structures, furniture)

Buildings must be strengthened to prevent collapse from an earthquake.

3. convince – to make someone feel certain that something is true

Bell's evidence convinced us that the first reports were true.

I'm convinced (that) she's lying.

4. split (split, split) – to divide into two or more parts

I suggest we split the profits between us.

The teacher split the class into three groups.

5. brake – to make a vehicle or bicycle go more slowly or stop by using its brake

She had to brake suddenly to avoid a dog in the road.

6. affect – to have an effect

The new tax law doesn't affect me because I'm a student.

The south of the country was worst affected by the drought.

7. diminish – to become smaller or less important

The threat of inflation is diminishing.

8. preposterous – completely unreasonable

It was a preposterous idea, and no one took it seriously

9. exaggerate – to make smth. seem larger, better, or worse than it really is

I don't want to exaggerate, but it was a dangerous situation.

10. scrutiny – careful and thorough examination of smb. or smth.

Closer scrutiny of the document revealed a number of interesting facts.

11. uncover – to discover smth. that has been kept secret

Customs officials uncovered a plot to smuggle weapons into the country.

12. morbid – having a strong and unhealthy interest in disgusting subjects

Judging from the book's sales, people have a morbid fascination with murder.

13. senseless – happening or done for no good reason or with no purpose

We don't want our men and women to die in a senseless war.

14. invisible – impossible to see

Invisible bacteria can lead to food poisoning.

15. backbone – strength of character, courage or determination

The delegates had enough backbone to reject the proposal.

16. surface – the outer or top part or layer of smth.

There was very little wind, and the surface of the water was calm.

17. manifestation – a sign showing the existence of a particular condition

His refusal to see us was a manifestation of his guilt.

18. confidence – the feeling that you can trust smb. or smth. to be good

Consumers' confidence in the economy is strong.

Her colleagues lost confidence in her.

19. repercussions – the effects of an event, esp. bad effects that happen much later

The government is making a major effort to deal with poverty and its repercussions.

20. obstacle – smth. that blocks the way or prevents progress

We suddenly encountered an obstacle along the trail.

There are no major environmental obstacles to building the golf course.

21. unacceptable – too bad to be accepted, approved of, or allowed to continue

These mistakes are unacceptable.

22. land – to arrive by plane or in a boat

The pilot said we would land in about 20 minutes.

We'd been sailing for three weeks by the time we landed at Miami.

23. conceal – to hide smth. carefully

Customs officers found a kilogram of cocaine that Smith had concealed inside his suitcase.

I yawned, not bothering to conceal my boredom.

24. composure – the quality of being calm and not emotional

You may feel nervous but don't lose your composure in front of the camera.

25. outskirts – the parts of a town or city that are farthest from the center

We stayed on the outskirts of the capital.

26. claim – to state that smth. is true or is a fact

Doctors claim to have discovered a cure for the disease.

Ervin claims (that) he is bankrupt.

27. exacerbate – to make a bad situation worse

Howe's unkind remarks have exacerbated racial tensions in the community.

28. detest – to hate, dislike extremely

She detested traveling in hot weather.

29. familiar – easy to recognize because previously experienced

Your face looks familiar to me.

I'm not familiar with current research in the field.

30. landmarks – a building or place that is easily recognized

The Washington Monument is a popular historical landmark.

31. abhor – to hate

His opponent abhors the death penalty.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. dislike, hate, detest, loath _____

2. absurd, foolish, unreasonable, silly _____

3. persuade, win over, talk into, bring around _____

4. lessen, reduce, decrease, decline _____

5. barrier, obstruction, hindrance, stumbling block, difficulty _____

6. fortitude, stamina, willpower, courage, determination _____

7. proof, demonstration, display, expression, symptoms _____

8. disguise, cover, keep a secret, hide _____

9. trust, faith, belief, assurance, _____

10. boundary, edge, outpost, periphery _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Opinion polls show that voters have lost _____ in the mayor.

A. proof

B. confidence

C. courage

D. surface

2. The secret police had _____ microphones in the walls.

A. concealed

B. declined

C. detested

D. exacerbated

3. I oppose and _____ discrimination of any kind.
A. abhor B. persuade C. cover D. exaggerate
4. Ticket prices for football games are absolutely _____ !
A. morbid B. familiar C. preposterous D. invisible
5. The riots are a clear _____ of growing discontent.
A. repercussion B. composure C. manifestation D. fortitude
6. There are plans to build a new shopping mall on the _____ of town.
A. scrutiny B. surface C. outskirts D. landmarks
7. Women still have to overcome many _____ to gain equality.
A. boundaries B. trusts C. displays D. obstacles
8. It will be hard to _____ voters it was a badly written law.
A. disguise B. loath C. convince D. lessen
9. Stuart doesn't have the _____ to be a good manager.
A. collapse B. backbone C. faith D. assurance
10. The party's share of the electorate has _____ steadily.
A. affected B. diminished C. approached D. deleted

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

backbone confidence conceal outskirts preposterous
diminish abhor obstacle convince manifestation

1. In the end she _____ the jury of her innocence.
2. We heard gunshots as we drove through the _____ of the city.
3. He doesn't have the _____ to face the truth.
4. Our first priority is to maintain the customer's _____ in our product.
5. These drugs _____ blood flow to the brain.
6. Fear of change is a(n) _____ to progress.
7. Hawkins was incapable of _____ how he felt from his close friends.
8. It's a _____ claim that the government is trying to poison its citizens.
9. Some men feel that showing their emotions is a _____ of weakness.

10. The great majority of the Irish people have always _____ violence.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. conceal | A. hide | B. reduce | C. persuade | D. cover |
| 2. diminish | A. increase | B. detest | C. disguise | D. decrease |
| 3. preposterous | A. pernicious | B. foolish | C. outrages | D. confident |
| 4. abhor | A. exacerbate | B. hate | C. uncover | D. exaggerate |
| 5. confidence | A. obstruction | B. expression | C. assurance | D. demonstration |
| 6. manifestation | A. determination | B. obstruction | C. hindrance | D. display |
| 7. obstacle | A. trust | B. boundary | C. barrier | D. fortitude |
| 8. backbone | A. belief | B. willpower | C. outpost | D. symptoms |
| 9. outskirts | A. edge | B. landmarks | C. surface | D. difficulty |
| 10. convince | A. persuade | B. lessen | C. loath | D. cover |

Part 3

1. preliminary – happening before something

Preliminary market research has shown that most Americans prefer environmentally-friendly products.

2. sight – the physical ability to see

She recently underwent an operation to restore her sight.

Mrs. Rosen is losing her sight.

3. anchor – to fasten smth. firmly

The shelves should be securely anchored to the wall.

2. involve – to include or affect someone or something

Any investment involves an element of risk.

The job involves traveling all over the country.

I always try to involve the whole class.

3. self-esteem – respect for yourself

The program is intended to build students' self-esteem.

Does he suffer from low self-esteem?

4. admit – to accept and agree unwillingly that smth. is true or smb. else is right

You may not like Joan, but you have to admit that she's good at her job.

5. damage – to harm or spoil smth.

Many buildings were badly damaged by the earthquake.

News reports damaged the senator's reputation.

6. swerve – to turn suddenly to one side while moving forward

The cab slowed down and swerved towards the curb.

7. lane – a part of a highway or a road for one vehicle

That idiot changed lanes without signaling.

Cars in the fast lane were traveling at over 80 miles an hour.

That section of Interstate 95 is a four-lane highway, with two northbound lanes and two southbound lanes.

8. predicament – an unpleasant or confusing situation that is difficult to solve

With no money and no job, he found himself in a real predicament.

9. harrowing – very frightening or shocking and making you feel very upset

His book tells the harrowing story of how they climbed Mt. Everest.

10. separate – to draw apart/divide

The child may be separated from his mother while she receives treatment.

The lighthouse is separated from the land by a wide channel.

11. misfortune – bad luck, or an unlucky event

Her misfortunes worsened this year, when her company eliminated her position and she lost her job.

The French soldiers had the misfortune to be caught in the crossfire.

12. hitchhike – to travel by getting a free ride in someone else's road vehicle

It took six days to hitchhike across Minnesota.

I had three hundred and sixty-five miles yet to hitchhike to New York, and a dime in my pocket.

13. sensible – having or using good judgment

She was sensible and easy to deal with.

He was sensible enough to see that Jake was the best candidate for the job.

We aim to help clients make financially sensible choices.

14. durable – able to last a long time without being damaged

Plastic window frames are more durable than wood.

15. tranquil – calm, quiet, and peaceful

I lay on the dock under a tranquil blue sky.

16. toll station – a place where you pay to drive on a road, bridge etc.

You have to pay tolls on many of the major roads in France.

17. restore – to make smth. new

Power company crews were working yesterday to restore electrical service to homes in the area.

Surgeons restored the sight in her right eye.

18. marvelous – extremely good, enjoyable, or impressive

The food was absolutely marvelous.

It's really a marvelous place.

'How was your holiday?' 'Marvelous!'

We had a marvelous time.

19. merciful – that seems fortunate because it ends smb.'s suffering or difficulty

With the Giants leading 28-7, half-time came as a merciful relief.

20. intercession – talking to a person in authority on behalf of another person

intercede – to speak in behalf of smb. to save them from harm

Some pharmacists will intercede on your behalf with doctors.

They interceded with the authorities on behalf of the detainees.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. fix, mend, rebuild, reconstruct, repair _____

2. acknowledge, confess, accept, agree _____

3. quiet, peaceful, calm, serene _____

4. long-lasting, firm, reliable, strong _____

5. dilemma, difficulty, emergency, crisis _____

6. isolate, segregate, disconnect, put apart _____
7. realistic, reasonable, prudent, sagacious _____
8. mediate, advocate, arbitrate, negotiate, butt in _____
9. first, initial, prior, preparatory, opening _____
10. injure, hurt, harm, ruin, spoil _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. I understood her _____ but there was nothing I could do.
A. damage B. intercession C. predicament D. confidence
2. Wood is a _____ material.
A. reasonable B. peaceful C. durable D. tranquil
3. Johnson is going to _____ with the authorities on Kelly's behalf.
A. acknowledge B. spoil C. accept D. intercede
4. _____ tests showed that pollution was very high in the river.
A. long-lasting B. reliable C. realistic D. preliminary
5. In summer, the normally _____ streets fill with crowds of tourists.
A. busy B. sagacious C. tranquil D. prudent
6. Blake finally _____ he had stolen the money.
A. involved B. admitted C. mediated D. spoiled
7. It's _____ to keep a note of your passport number.
A. sensible B. harmful C. reliable D. merciful
8. The utility company is still working to _____ power supplies in rural areas.
A. restore B. arbitrate C. negotiate D. isolate
9. They are _____ by thousands of miles.
A. advocated B. separated C. rebuilt D. fixed
10. The storm _____ hundreds of houses.
A. disconnected B. put apart C. damaged D. mended

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

tranquil separate durable restore predicament
damage intercede sensible admit preliminary

1. Moving house seemed like the _____ thing to do.
2. For a few weeks, the atmosphere on the Street was quiet, almost _____.
3. Their garden is _____ from the factory by a tall fence.
4. It will take time to _____ the company to profitability.
5. The prison chaplain would often _____ for inmates.
6. The architect's plans are still in the _____ stages.
7. The hospital refused to _____ liability for the deaths of the two young children.
8. Bronze is harder and more _____ than tin.
9. If everyone had followed the rules we wouldn't be in this _____.
10. Don't put any hot things on the table – you'll _____ the surface.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. predicament | A. difficulty | B. stamina | C. obstruction | D. periphery |
| 2. tranquil | A. long-lasting | B. calm | C. ludicrous | D. sagacious |
| 3. durable | A. coherent | B. strong | C. distinct | D. silly |
| 4. sensible | A. reasonable | B. evident | C. clear | D. reliable |
| 5. separate | A. disguise | B. discredit | C. mediate | D. isolate |
| 6. intercede | A. injure | B. retire | C. advocate | D. defer |
| 7. damage | A. ruin | B. accept | C. decline | D. detest |
| 8. admit | A. desire | B. confess | C. repair | D. arbitrate |
| 9. restore | A. fix | B. arrange | C. spoil | D. notice |
| 10. preliminary | A. last | B. pernicious | C. strong | D. initial |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Parts 1 & 2

- 1. come from** – to be from the place where you live
to be obtained from a place, thing, or person

She comes from Germany.

The name 'terrier' comes from the Latin word 'terra' meaning the earth.

- 2. wash up** – to wash plates, dishes, knives etc.

I decided to wash up before going to bed.

It's your turn to do the washing-up, Sam.

- 3. stand out** – to be very easy to see or notice
to be much better than other similar people or things

The outlines of rooftops and chimneys stood out against the pale sky.

Fred was very tall and stood out in the crowd.

Three of the cars we tested stood out among the rest.

- 4. take in** – to absorb smth. into the body/include

Fish take in oxygen through their gills.

The class of mammals takes in nearly all warm-blood animals except the birds

- 5. account for** – to explain the reason for smth.

There was a fishy flavor to the milk that I could not account for.

- 6. muddle through** – to succeed in doing smth. with difficulty

I don't know how to keep score – I'll just have to muddle through.

The team managed to muddle through another season.

- 7. reason out** (syn. work out) – to find an explanation or solution to a problem

I think we should take time to reason the matter out.

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| 1. take in | a. to explain the reason |
| 2. come from | h. to wash the dishes |

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 3. stand out | c. to include |
| 4. reason out | d. to succeed in doing something |
| 5. muddle through | e. to be noticeable |
| 6. wash up | f. to be for a place |
| 7. account for | g. to find a solution to the problem |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. There were some difficult questions but I managed to succeed in answering them.
2. The breakfast things have not been washed up yet.
3. Find an explanation for yourself.
4. Owen is recognized as the best young player in the game.
5. Recent pressures at work may explain Steve's odd behavior.
6. A lot of drugs are obtained from quite common plants.
7. The book includes a period between 1891 and 1920.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. You should _____ the consequences before you take a decision.
2. The tour _____ in six European capitals.
3. My information _____ a very reputable source.
4. I can help to cook and _____ .
5. You _____ , reduced to selling your own ads to make a decent buck.
6. How do you _____ this show's success?
7. The dark shapes of the trees _____ against the evening sky.

Part 3

1. think of – to consider the possibility of doing smth.

I had never thought of becoming an actor.

2. be over – finished

Is the meeting over yet?

3. end up – to come to be in a particular situation, esp. when you did not plan it

You could end up dead if you're not careful.

Cochrane ended up with 12 percent of the vote.

4. get in – to go inside a place / a vehicle

I walked to the van, got in and drove away.

5. pick up – to collect/to go to get smb. / smth.

Whose turn is it to pick up the kids from school?

A truck picks up the recycling once a week.

6. get out of – to leave a place/a vehicle

He got out of the car.

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| 1. end up | a. something is finished |
| 2. think of | h. come to be in a particular situation or place |
| 3. pick up | c. go inside a vehicle |
| 4. get out of | d. leave a vehicle |
| 5. get in | e. consider smth. |
| 6. be over | f. collect smb. / smth. |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. I fell asleep on the bus and came to arrive in Denver.
2. I entered the car to start the engine.
3. I'm considering specializing in Russian and Chinese.
4. I left the car to scrape the snow and ice from the windows.
5. I'll come by tonight to get my books.
6. By the time we arrived the meeting ended.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Whenever we go out to dinner with them, I always _____ paying the bill.
2. I _____ the car to check the oil.
3. We are _____ moving to Tokyo.
4. Could you _____ me _____ around eight?
5. Quick! _____ the car and fasten your seatbelt!
6. I'm so glad the mid-term exams _____ and done with.

C. IDIOMS

1. at the same time – together, at one time

Can you really watch TV and study at the same time?

on the other hand, however

It's really a good idea, but at the same time it's pretty risky.

2. take a lead – to go ahead of the other competitors in a race or competition

to be the first to do smth., hoping that others will copy you

Kent took the lead in the fifth lap.

Germany took the lead in recognizing the new republics.

3. be / lie at the bottom – to be the basic cause of a problem or situation

Lack of money is at the bottom of many family problems.

Knowing that self-interest lay at the bottom of his proposal did not prevent my being grateful.

4. lose consciousness – to become unconsciousness

I can't remember anything – I must have lost consciousness.

5. recover / regain composure – to control your emotions again

Marian managed to recover her composure and thank everyone for coming.

6. make one's way – to move toward smth., especially slowly or with difficulty

Lisac eventually made his way to Canada and settled there.

to slowly become successful in a particular job, or activity

A number of firms are unable to make their way in the new capitalist system.

7. in time – early or soon enough to do smth.

Will you be back in time for dinner?

I should be back in time to watch the show.

The ambulance got there just in time

on time – arriving or happening at the correct time or the time that was arranged

McCoy did not show up on time for the trial.

Mr. Frank ended the meeting right on time.

8. make (it to) – to succeed in reaching a particular place

We'll be lucky if we make San Francisco by nightfall.

Although he couldn't swim he managed to make it to the other side of the river.

9. make a / the difference – to be important / matter

Whatever she did, it made no difference.

Having a good teacher has made all the difference for Alex.

Morning or afternoon, it makes no difference to me.

10. make arrangements – to make plans and preparations

Linda and Paul went to London to make arrangements for the wedding.

I made an arrangement to see George while he was in town.

11. on the (off) chance – counting on the slight possibility

I didn't think you'd be at home but I just called by on the chance.

12. make your way to / through / towards etc. – go towards something

The team slowly made their way back to base.

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms.

recover composure

take a chance

take a lead

be at the bottom

make his way

on time

on the (off) chance

at the same time

in time

lose consciousness

1. The plane is expected to arrive _____ .
2. When installing electrical equipment don't _____ . A mistake could kill.
3. His jealousy is _____ our problems.
4. Will we be _____ for the six o'clock train?
5. The U.S. _____ in declaring war on terrorism.
6. Carter looked stunned, but he soon _____ .
7. David _____ and had to be taken to the hospital.
8. I keep all of my old clothes _____ that they might come back into fashion.
9. He was anxious to finish school and _____ in the world.
10. I can't concentrate on two things _____ .

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. Will you be able to _____ your way to the airport?
2. She leaves at nine-thirty, when dinner is finished and the washing-up is _____.
3. We need to think of ways to _____ money.
4. I'm sure a few days off would _____ you good.
5. One more person wouldn't _____ any difference to the arrangements.
6. The travel company _____ arrangements for our hotels and flights.
7. The treatment they gave him _____ him more harm than good.
8. When the car broke down for the third time I began to wonder if we would ever _____ it to Rome.
9. They were _____ some type of statistical analysis.
10. We never _____ the dishes until morning.

D. WORD STUDY

BORDER – FRONTIER – BOUNDARY

1. border (with / between) – the official line that separates two countries
on / across / along the **border**

It is a mountainous region, occupying a large area near the border with Nepal.

2. frontier (between / with) – the border of a country, esp. the actual point where people and vehicles are allowed to cross from one country to another.

on / at the **frontier**

All traffic crossing the frontier will be thoroughly searched, causing even longer delays.

3. boundary – the official line that marks the edge of an area of land, of a farm, or of a local area within the country

A special commission was set up to re-examine the boundaries of English counties.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. In 1885, the state drew the southern _____ .

2. The army's main task was to patrol the _____ regions.
3. He was stopped by the soldiers at a _____ post.
4. As soon as we crossed the _____ we began to see signs of poverty.
5. Jeumont is a small town on the French-Belgian _____ .
6. We would need their agreement to build outside the city _____ .
7. Anything that crosses the _____ of a black hole cannot get back.
8. The river lies on the _____ between the US and Mexico.
9. Texas The coach took us south of the _____ to Tia Juana.
10. The two governments have settled their differences over their common _____ .
11. The _____ for the Snowdonia National Park run round the edge of Penrhyn, which covers six square miles.
12. Lille is close to the _____ between France and Belgium.
13. The property's _____ line is 25 feet from the back of the house.
14. Troops established a road block on the _____ .
15. Refugees have been warned not to attempt to cross the _____ .
16. They settled in Ronco, a picturesque village near the Italian _____ .

REACH – APPROACH – GET – ARRIVE

1. reach – to succeed in reaching a place

By the end of the first day we had reached a small town 500km south of Paris.

The relief workers must ensure that food reaches every area that needs it.

2. approach – to move nearer to a place / person

As the train approached the station, it's whistle sounded shrilly.

3. get (to / as far as) – to reach a place / to arrive somewhere

We got as far as the river when it started raining so we decided to come back.

I got halfway to the station before I realized I'd left all my money at home.

What time will we get there?

4. arrive (in / at) – to get to the place you are going to

What time does the plane arrive in New York?

It was already dark by the time they arrived at their hotel.

I was pleased to hear you arrived home safely.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. As I _____ the house, I noticed a light on upstairs.
2. We didn't _____ home until midnight.
3. We _____ to Paris that evening.
4. We _____ London late at night.
5. As they _____ the wood, a deer ran out of the trees.
6. Our flight _____ in Osaka two hours ahead of schedule.
7. We _____ at the palace, went in, and got to the dressing-room.
8. As you _____ the town, you'll see the college on the left.
9. It took more than three days to _____ the top of the mountain.
10. The plane _____ the runway.
11. It took seven hours before we _____ the border.
12. A strange boat was _____ the shore.
13. Snow prevented workers from _____ the broken pipeline.
14. I finally _____ home at five in the morning.
15. I usually _____ to work at about 8.30.
16. A tourist _____ us and asked us the way to the station.

– PICK –

1. pick at – to eat only small amounts of food

Paige could only pick at her meal, forcing down a mouthful or two.

2. pick on – to criticize / to tease

They always pick on Tom when anything goes wrong.

3. pick out – to choose

It took Mary a long time to pick out a dress at the store.

Syn. make out – to recognize / to tell from others

We couldn't pick Bob out in the big crowd.

4. pick up – to reprimand / to correct smb.

I made a few mistakes in the calculations and the teacher picked me up for them.

to catch / to arrest

The police picked up the man they were looking for just outside the town.

to learn

Where did you pick up your Russian?

to get / to buy

I picked up this coat in the sales for only forty pounds.

to increase

The car picked up the speed.

to improve

The economy is finally beginning to pick up again.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. Pete has been quite ill, but he's picking _____ again now.
2. We could pick _____ different places from the airplane.
3. Did you pick _____ the clothes from the dry-cleaner's?
4. Have you picked _____ the photographs that you would like to have?
5. Share prices have picked _____ recently.
6. Other boys picked _____ him until he decided to fight.
7. For more details, pick _____ a leaflet in your local post office.
8. At dinner Norm had seconds of everything, but Benjy only picked _____ his food.
9. The survivors were picked _____ by fishing boats from nearby villages.
10. He was picked _____ by police as he was trying to leave the country.
11. I picked _____ a few words of Greek when I was there last year.
12. I picked _____ Valerie's voice from among the general conversation.

E. REVISION

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. It was a small country town, and she looked very _____ in her fashionable clothes.
A. conspicuous B. intelligent C. coherent D. evanescent
2. The world's resources are rapidly _____ .
A. quitting B. diminishing C. repairing D. mending
3. I knew I had to give a speech, but the thought filled me with _____ .
A. loath B. anxiety C. obstruction D. dilemma
4. Several recent events have _____ the government's public image.
A. mediated B. reconstructed C. damaged D. reduced
5. My good friend, Senator Bowie, _____ with the authorities on my behalf.
A. acknowledged B. discredited C. interceded D. deferred
6. The roofs are constructed from heavy and _____ timbers, usually teak or mahogany.
A. discernable B. initial C. evident D. durable
7. After three days in the hotel I found a small new house on the _____ of town.
A. anchors B. premises C. outskirts D. borders
8. Kim could barely _____ her annoyance that I had arrived so late.
A. yearn B. conceal C. detest D. advocate
9. Roberts replaces Jacob Winters, who _____ from the firm last month.
A. faded B. resigned C. accepted D. segregated

10. He's one of the few _____ people on the council.
A. sensible B. intelligible C. strong D. apparent
11. The government is trying to _____ the public that it's getting tough on corruption.
A. convince B. negotiate C. confess D. cover
12. The Bank immediately took action to restore _____ .
A. hindrance B. fortitude C. confidence D. proof
13. The plane _____ from radar screens soon after taking off.

- A. arbitrated B. lessened C. retired D. vanished
14. Efforts are being made to make life more _____ in Japan's overcrowded cities.
A. tranquil B. silly C. distinct D. firm
15. To cross the _____, you will need a valid passport.
A. boundary B. edge C. border D. obstacle
16. The opening of the new bridge may be _____ for several months.
A. spoiled B. delayed C. brought around D. hindered
17. This type of a computer jargon is barely _____ to most people.
A. comprehensible B. sagacious C. comprehensive D. ridiculous
18. The discussions were _____ to preparing a policy paper.
A. clear B. prudent C. preliminary D. coherent
19. More and more people are moving outside the city _____ .
A. boundaries B. borders C. frontiers D. anchors
20. The greatest _____ to economic progress has been mass unemployment.
A. obstacle B. display C. emergency D. willpower

2. Complete each sentence with a word in the box.

comprehensible	convince	obstacle	boundary	reach
vanish	anxiety	sensible	diminish	outskirts
durable	conceal	damage	intercede	resign
conspicuous	tranquil	delay	confidence	frontier

- The procedure must be clear and _____ to all staff.
- He decided to _____ his departure until after he'd seen the Director.
- City's few tourists are _____ as they explore the old cobbled streets.
- She led a _____ life in the country.
- The only remaining obstacles are located at Wester Hailes, a residential development on the western _____ of Edinburgh.
- The time Foreman spent with his children gradually _____ .

7. You need patience and _____ to be a good teacher.
8. Several aircraft and ships have _____ without a trace in the notorious Bermuda Triangle.
9. The increase in the tax on heating fuel is causing a lot of _____ among elderly people.
10. The crisis has badly _____ the president's authority.
11. What you need for Africa is a simple, _____ and inexpensive vehicle.
12. Local groups asked the politician to _____ with the government on their behalf.
13. She had to overcome a lot of _____ to finally make it to drama college.
14. He tried to _____ her anger from his friend
15. The officials were eager to _____ us of the safety of the nuclear reactors.
16. If anyone has any _____ suggestions as to how to deal with this, please let me know.
17. I wanted to _____ , but my boss persuaded me to stay.
18. The stream curves round to mark the _____ of his property.
19. Some letters are taking up to two weeks to _____ their destination.
20. Many of the cars crossing the _____ were stopped and searched.

3. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. durable | A. long-lasting | B. realistic | C. evident | D. silly |
| 2. obstacle | A. willpower | B. hindrance | C. dilemma | D. fear |
| 3. separate | A. mediate | B. segregate | C. repatriate | D. defer |
| 4. sensible | A. intelligible | B. reliable | C. prudent | D. faithful |
| 5. vanish | A. confess | B. accept | C. hinder | D. evanesce |
| 6. diminish | A. disguise | B. display | C. decline | D. disconnect |
| 7. anxiety | A. shame | B. stamina | C. uneasiness | D. obstruction |
| 8. manifestation | A. expression | B. proof | C. devotion | D. difficulty |
| 9. comprehensible | A. sagacious | B. coherent | C. complete | D. acceptable |
| 10. abhor | A. anchor | B. decline | C. desire | D. detest |

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 11. conspicuous | A. peaceful | B. absurd | C. apparent | D. invisible |
| 12. delay | A. put off | B. win over | C. butt in | D. put apart |
| 13. resign | A. hurt | B. spoil | C. quit | D. cover |
| 14. predicament | A. boundary | B. dilemma | C. assurance | D. fortitude |
| 15. tranquil | A. serene | B. reasonable | C. sensible | D. sensitive |
| 16. damage | A. defer | B. lower | C. spoil | D. loath |
| 17. preliminary | A. reasonable | B. prior | C. discernable | D. sagacious |
| 18. restore | A. fade | B. reduce | C. mend | D. isolate |
| 19. intercede | A. mediate | B. acknowledge | C. hurt | D. reconstruct |
| 20. conceal | A. confess | B. negotiate | C. lessen | D. disguise |

4. Choose the word opposite in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. vanish | A. appear | B. evanesce | C. decrease | D. decline |
| 2. anxiety | A. fear | B. faith | C. calmness | D. barrier |
| 3. confidence | A. assurance | B. confession | C. distrust | D. disgrace |
| 4. serene | A. sensible | B. peaceful | C. absurd | D. nervous |
| 5. admit | A. acknowledge | B. disguise | C. deny | D. neglect |
| 6. conceal | A. rebuild | B. reveal | C. cover | D. mediate |
| 7. separate | A. unite | B. persuade | C. disconnect | D. segregate |
| 8. durable | A. firm | B. unstable | C. flexible | D. incoherent |
| 9. diminish | A. evanesce | B. mend | C. increase | D. lessen |
| 10. abhor | A. loath | B. love | C. arrange | D. agree |

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

- I couldn't _____ any familiar landmarks in the dark and got completely lost.
- Forbes _____ in prison for not paying his taxes.
- Most of the time he just _____ his food.
- We _____ a hitchhiker on the way.
- We will _____ the deal _____ and call you tomorrow.

6. She _____ Spanish while she was living in Mexico.
7. Can you _____ your fingerprints on the gun?
8. The bus will _____ passengers outside the airport.
9. As a student, Molly _____ from the rest of her classmates.
10. Why do you always _____ me?
11. She was _____ from dozens of applicants for the job.
12. The course _____ practically all English dramatists between 1750 and 1900.
13. Where do you _____ originally?
14. Our speed began to _____ as we started downhill.
15. We want the picture on the cover of the newspaper to _____ .
16. Did you know the word 'idea' _____ Greek?
17. Do you want me to _____ something for you at the store?
18. He insisted on helping me _____ .
19. I don't speak Spanish very well, but I managed to _____ during my vacation in Mexico.
20. Authorities _____ Linden _____ at a border crossing.
21. Summer vacation will _____ soon.
22. We are _____ buying a house.
23. Sales should _____ again in November.
24. A ship was sent to _____ the survivors.

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. We arrived just _____ for the show.
2. It's not worth _____ .
3. Don't worry. I can _____ to the beach.
4. The New Zealand team _____ Auckland in record time.
6. It _____ no _____ to me whether it rains or not. I have to stay at home anyway.
7. As he fell he hit his head and _____ .

8. The local newspaper _____ to record an interview with Professor Stein.
9. I hate not being _____ for class.
10. _____ that painters are finished by tonight, you can sand the floors tomorrow.
11. _____ country's problems is 25% unemployment.
12. At the end of the book Betsy sets off to _____ in the world.
13. The media's criticism can be hard to take. But _____, we've got to keep doing our jobs.
14. It's up to the U.S. and Russia to _____ in solving the crisis.
15. The judge allowed the witness a few minutes to _____ her composure.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *un-*.

___avoidable	___visible	___conspicuous
___acceptable	___able	___comprehensible
___sincere	___covered	___sensible
___aware	___fair	___easy

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. The writing ability of some of the students was so poor that their essays were almost _____ .
2. _____ bacteria can lead to food poisoning.
3. The proposal is _____ to theater owners.
4. Customs officials _____ a plot to smuggle weapons into the country.
5. She was totally _____ that she was being watched.
6. The mayor's sympathy seemed _____ .
7. The two bank robbers got in line at a nearby fast-food restaurant, hoping to be _____ as police flooded the area.
8. She remained _____ of the dangers that lay ahead.

9. After the speech there was an _____ silence and nobody clapped.
10. U.S. industries want to protect themselves from _____ foreign competition.
11. Lucy was _____ to find out what had happened.
12. There are now fears that war is _____ .

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. He refused to climb the ladder because of his fear _____ heights.
2. They escaped _____ the border into Thailand.
3. She was laughing and crying _____ the same time.
4. The town lies _____ the border between Chile and Argentina.
5. The ambulance got there just _____ time.
6. I don't want to become a burden _____ my children when I'm old.
7. Supply ships have started arriving _____ ports along the East coast.
8. The train arrived _____ time.
9. I had a considerable difficulty _____ persuading her to leave.
10. The British Prime Minister arrived _____ Tokyo today.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. We would be grateful _____ any information you can give us.
2. You'll never persuade John to climb up there! He's afraid _____ heights.
3. They were aware _____ the tense atmosphere in the room.
4. We are really grateful _____ you.
5. Jacobson admitted _____ giving false information.
6. Survivors of the accident suffered _____ burns and respiratory problems.
7. It was freezing outside and she longed _____ a hot drink.
8. She works _____ a big law firm in the city.
9. The stewardess reminded him _____ his ex-girlfriend.
10. Shelly arranged _____ the publication of her thesis.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. Have you decided where _____ (spend) your holiday?
2. I avoid _____ (visit) shops where there are a lot of people.
3. She is looking forward to _____ (visit) a lot of exciting places.
4. She has saved enough money _____ (go) on vacation.
5. We expect _____ (hear) from Ann soon.
6. My friend offered _____ (lend) me a little money.
7. Being a doctor means _____ (work) long hours.
8. I'm sorry I didn't mean _____ (hurt) you.
9. The tea is too hot _____ (drink).
10. It is not worth _____ (invite) John to the party. He won't come.
11. I reminded Sue _____ (buy) coffee.
12. Dick appears _____ (have) a lot of money.
13. He threatened _____ (report) their behavior to the principal.
14. The doctor recommended _____ (follow) a diet of fresh fruit and vegetables.
15. I arranged for Jane _____ (stay) in London.
16. The children seem _____ (understand) why they have to stay home tonight.
17. The plan could involve _____ (close) several factories.
18. Apparently criminals tend _____ (return) to the scene of the crime.
19. I learned _____ (drive) when I was 15.
20. Imagine _____ (live) in a big house like that.
21. George claims _____ (remember) exactly what the gunman looked like.
22. They have failed _____ (come up) with any practical solution.
23. The police delayed _____ (make) any announcement until the girl's relatives had been contacted.
24. He mentioned _____ (leave) his job.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of say or tell.

1. She _____ me about her holiday in Finland.

2. Can you _____ Tom from his twin brother?
3. They _____ to us that they were going to be a little late.
4. I couldn't think of anything to _____ .
5. She wrote to _____ her friend she was getting married.
6. The book doesn't _____ where he was born.
7. There is a sign _____ people that this is the highest village in England.
8. I want to _____ a little about my family.
9. The President _____ in an interview that he had no intention of resigning.
10. To _____ you the truth, I fell asleep in the middle of her talk.
11. A woman at the fair was _____ people's fortunes.
12. I wouldn't _____ no to a cup of coffee.

7. Turn the sentences into reported statements.

1. He said, "We are going to launch a thorough investigation."

2. He said, "There will be no increase in taxes."

3. He said, "I can't come to the party, because I'm doing my homework."

4. He said, "I'm leaving now."

5. She said, "This meat tastes funny."

6. He said, "Pete phoned me two days ago."

7. He said, "I might be able to see you next week."

8. He said, "We were planning to go out but Joe started feeling sick."

9. He said, "I'm sure I have left it here."

10. He said, "You must be home by 9 o'clock."

11. He said, "I should leave early this morning."

12. He said, "I don't need help with my luggage."

8. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. He asked, "Will you have time to help me?"

2. He asked, "Is the meeting on Tuesday or Wednesday?"

3. He asked, "Can you lend me some money?"

4. He asked, "Do you have any plans to go away this summer?"

5. He asked, "Are you passing your biology class?"

6. He asked, "Have you ever seen panda?"

7. He asked, "Did you attend a conference in London?"

8. He asked, "Are you going to be at the meeting today?"

9. He asked, "Are you tired?"

10. He asked, "Did you hear the weather report?"

9. Turn these sentences into reported questions.

1. He asked, "How are you?"

2. He asked, "Why did you apply for the job?"

3. He asked, "What does this word mean?"

4. He asked, "What time do the banks close?"

5. He asked, "How much does it cost to park here?"

6. He asked, "Where can I find Linda?"

7. He asked, "What's the time?"

8. He asked, "How far is it to the airport?"

9. He asked, "When film will be shown?"

10. He asked, "Why didn't Kate come to the party?"

10. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. He said, "I don't have much free time."

2. He asked, "Are you glad to be back?"

3. He asked, "What do you mean?"

4. He said, "I'll carry the box up the stairs."

5. He said, "I'm exhausted."

6. He asked, "Can you start working tomorrow?"

7. He asked, "Is there a bank near here?"

8. He said, "You can come and stay at my place when you are in Paris."

9. He asked, "What time did they leave?"

10. He said, "I forgot to pay the electric bill."

11. Underline the correct linking word / phrase.

1. The food is wonderful and also / besides very cheap.

2. She was not only extremely intelligent but / as well very practical.

3. We have to pay \$800 travel insurance moreover / in addition to the airfare.

4. Both he and / as well as his wife enjoy tennis.

5. I don't really want to go. As well / Besides, it's too late.

6. She knew the accident wasn't her fault. Although / Nevertheless she felt guilty.

7. War is a terrible thing. However / Though, I believe that we must defend our country.

8. We've only spent about \$500, nevertheless / although that doesn't include the hotel bill.

9. She knew her friends would be there. She didn't want to go though / even though.

10. He has a good job, and yet / still he never seems to have any money.

12. Join the ideas, using the correct words/phrases in brackets.

1. I don't think I'll come on Saturday. I have a lot of work to do. I don't really like parties. (Besides / But)

2. For this job you will need a good knowledge of Italian. You will need Spanish. (and yet / both and)

3. They are very different. They seemed to get on well when they met. (also / though)

4. My roommate and I ought to study during spring break. We are going to take a vacation. (Moreover / Nevertheless)

5. The organization encourages members to meet on a regular basis. It provides them with financial support. (although / as well as)

6. Sarah told me she was coming to the party. She hasn't turned up yet. (but / in addition)

7. Going to aerobics is such an effort. I enjoy it so much. (and yet / as well)

8. Linda's biology professor encouraged her to go to graduate school. He nominated her for a graduate scholarship. (Nevertheless / Moreover)

9. There isn't a lot of space in here. it's a cozy little room. (Furthermore / Still)

10. He repairs motorcycles. He teaches motorcycle repairs. (not only but also / and yet)

11. Cars are very useful. They cause a huge amount of pollution.
(On the other hand / Also)

12. We thought the figures were correct. We have now discovered some errors.
(Moreover / However)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

Part 1

1. What did the mother look like?
2. What idiosyncrasy did she have?
3. What was she afraid of?
4. What phobia did his brother have?
5. How did the phobia affect him?

Part 2

1. What happened as they approached the George Washington Bridge?
2. What route did he choose to follow when he had to drive to Albany?
3. What did his family doctor advise him?
4. What was the psychiatrist diagnosis and advice?
5. How did he avoid going over the bridge in San Francisco?

Part 3

1. Why did he have to cross George Washington Bridge again?
2. How did he feel while he was crossing the bridge?
3. What bridge did he decide to cross on his way home? How did he feel?
4. What was the girl doing on the bridge?
5. When did the seizure stop?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

Part 1

1. How did he feel about his mother?
2. What was behind her waltzing on ice skates?
3. Why do you think she was afraid of planes?
4. What was his attitude to his brother?

Part 2

1. Where could he drive without having the seizures?
2. How did he account for his fear of bridges?
3. Why did the author decide to muddle through on his own?
4. Why do you think he didn't want to discuss his problems with his relatives?

Part 3

1. Why do you think his phobia vanished?
2. Why did he choose not to tell his mother and his brother about the girl on the bridge?
3. Why do you think he decided to stay off big bridges?
4. Why do you think J. Cheever named the story "Angel of the bridge"?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

Complete the chart.

	author	his mother	his brother
phobia		had fear of flights; fear of dying in a plane crash	
manifestation/ how they felt			Sweat stood out on his forehead, and he gasped like a runner.
when	while crossing bridges		
	author	his mother	his brother
		longs for the	

reason		vanishing and provincial world of her youth; does not relish change; as she grew older the world seemed to change its boundaries and become less and less comprehensible.	
measures taken			went to a psychiatrist; resigned; found a job in a third-floor office
did they get rid of their phobias?			

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Discuss the author's attitude to his brother; mother. Find sentences in the story to support your opinion.

2. Give examples from the story which show that characters' attitude to their psychic problems was different.
3. Think about what might happen to the mother and the brother if they didn't get rid of their phobias.
4. Do you think that the author was right in his decision to keep his 'lucky break' a secret?

E. WRITING

1. Write short paragraphs describing the events during which the author found out about his mother's phobia / his brother's phobia.
2. Write a paragraph about the events during which the author had these seizures.
3. Pretend to be a doctor. Write a letter to the author / his mother / his brother describing their problems, explaining the reason for their problems and giving advice.
4. Compare and contrast the characters' phobias. (manifestation, circumstances, reasons, steps taken, etc.)

UNIT III

THE COUNTRY HUSBAND

John Cheever

PART 1 A

To begin at the beginning, the airplane from Minneapolis in which Francis Weed was travelling East ran into heavy weather. The sky had been hazy blue, with the clouds below the plane lying so close together that nothing could be seen of the earth. Then mist began to form outside the windows, and they flew into a white cloud of such density that it reflected the exhaust fires. The color of the cloud darkened to gray, and the plane began to rock. Francis had been in heavy weather before, but he had never been shaken up so much. The man in the seat beside him pulled a flask out of his pocket and took a drink. Francis smiled at his neighbor, but the man looked away; he wasn't

sharing his painkiller with anyone. The plane had begun to drop and flounder wildly. A child was crying. The air in the cabin was overheated and stale, and Francis' left foot went to sleep. He read a little from a paper book that he had bought at the airport, but the violence of the storm divided his attention. Then the lights flickered and went out.

The stewardess announced that they were going to make an emergency landing. There was a shrieking high in the air, like automobile brakes, and the plane hit flat on its belly in a cornfield and shook them so violently that an old man up forward howled, "Me kidneys! Me kidneys!" The stewardess flung open the door, and someone opened an emergency door at the back, letting in the sweet noise of their continuing mortality – the idle splash and smell of a heavy rain. Anxious for their lives, they filed out of the doors and scattered over the cornfield in all directions, praying that the thread would hold. It did. Nothing happened. When it was clear that the plane would not burn or explode, the crew and the stewardess gathered the passengers together and led them to the shelter of a barn. They were not far from Philadelphia, and in a little while a string of taxis took them into the city.

In Philadelphia, Francis Weed got a train to New York. At the end of that journey, he crossed the city and caught, just as it was about to pull out, the commuting train that he took five nights a week to his home in Shady Hill. He sat with Trace Bearden. "You know, I was in that plane that just crashed outside Philadelphia," he said. "We came down in a field..." He had travelled faster than the newspapers or the rain, and the weather in New York was sunny and mild. It was a day in late September, as fragrant and shapely as an apple. Trace listened to the story, but how could he get excited? Francis had no powers that would let him recreate a brush with death — particularly in the atmosphere of a commuting train, journeying through a sunny countryside where already, in the plum gardens, there were signs of harvest. Trace picked up his newspaper, and Francis was left alone with his thoughts. He said good night to Trace on the platform at Shady Hill and drove in his second-hand Volkswagen up to the Blenhollow neighborhood, where he lived.

PART 1 B

The Weeds' Dutch Colonial house was larger than it appeared to be from the driveway. The living room was spacious. The sounds and smells that came from the open kitchen door were appetizing, for Julia Weed was a good cook. The living room was polished and tranquil. The hearth was swept, the roses on the piano were reflected in the polish of the broad top, and there was an album of Schubert waltzes on the rack. Louisa Weed, a pretty girl of nine, was looking out the western windows. Her younger brother Henry was standing beside her. Her still younger brother, Toby, was studying the figures of some tonsured monks drinking beer on the polished brass of the wood box. Francis, taking off his hat and putting down his paper, said, "Hi, everybody, the plane from Minneapolis..."

Nine times out of ten, Francis would be greeted with affection, but tonight the children are absorbed in their own antagonisms. Francis has not finished his sentence about the plane crash before Henry plants a kick in Louisa's behind. Louisa swings around, saying "Damn you!" Francis makes the mistake of scolding Louisa for bad language before he punishes Henry. Now Louisa turns on her father and accuses him of favoritism. Henry is always right; she is persecuted and lonely; her lot is hopeless. Francis turns to his son, but the boy has justification for the kick – she hit him first; she hit him on the ear, which is dangerous. Louisa agrees with this passionately. She hit him on the ear, and she meant to hit him on the ear, because he messed up her china collection. Henry says that this is a lie. Little Toby turns away from the wood box to throw in some evidence for Louisa. Henry claps his hand over little Toby's mouth. Francis separates the two boys but accidentally pushes Toby into the wood box. Toby begins to cry. Louisa is already crying. Just then, Julia Weed comes into that part of the room where the table is set. She is a pretty, intelligent woman, and the white in her hair is premature. She does not seem to notice the fracas. "Hello, darling," she says serenely to Francis. "Wash your hands, everyone. Dinner is ready." She strikes a match and lights the six candles in this vale of tears.

Julia, still ignoring the chaos, asks Francis to go upstairs and tell Helen that

everything is ready. Francis is happy to go; it is like getting back to headquarters company. He is planning to tell his oldest daughter about the airplane crash, but Helen is lying on her bed reading a True Romance magazine, and the first thing Francis does is to take the magazine from her hand and remind Helen that he has forbidden her to buy it. She did not buy it, Helen replies. It was given to her by her best friend, Bessie Black. Everybody reads True Romance. Bessie Black's father reads True Romance. There isn't a girl in Helen's class who doesn't read True Romance. Francis expresses his detestation of the magazine and then tells her that dinner's ready – although from the sounds downstairs it doesn't seem so. Helen follows him down the stairs. Julia has seated herself in the candlelight and spread a napkin over her lap. Neither Louisa nor Henry has come to the table. Little Toby is still howling, lying face down on the floor. Francis asks Julia if the children couldn't have their dinner earlier. Julia's guns are loaded for this. She can't cook two dinners and set two tables. She paints with lightning strokes that panorama of drudgery in which her youth, her beauty, and her wit have been lost. Francis says that he must be understood; he was nearly killed in an airplane crash, and he doesn't like to come home every night to a battlefield. Now Julia is deeply committed. Her voice trembles. He doesn't come home every night to a battlefield. The accusation is stupid and mean. Everything was tranquil until he arrived. She stops speaking, puts down her knife and fork, and begins to cry. "Poor Mummy!" Toby says, and when Julia gets up from the table, drying her tears with a napkin, Toby goes to her side. And they climb the stairs together. The other children drift away from the battlefield, and Francis goes into the back garden for a cigarette and some air.

Julia and Francis Weed went out a great deal. Julia was well liked and gregarious, and her love of parties sprang from a most natural dread of chaos and loneliness. She went through her morning mail with real anxiety, looking for invitations, and she usually found some, but she was insatiable, and if she had gone out seven nights a week, it would not have cured her of a reflective look – the look of someone who hears distant music – for she would always suppose that there was a more brilliant party somewhere else. Francis limited her to two weeknight parties, putting a flexible

interpretation on Friday, and rode through the weekend like a dory in a gale.

The day after the airplane crash, the Weeds were to have dinner with the Farquarsons. Francis got home late from town, and Julia got the sitter while he dressed, and then hurried him out of the house. ...

When the party ended, he and Julia drove home. Julia went into the house, while Francis stayed in the car to take the sitter home. Expecting to see Mrs. Henlein, the old lady who usually stayed with the children, he was surprised when a young girl opened the door and came out onto the lighted stoop. She stayed in the light to count her textbooks. She was frowning and beautiful. Now, the world is full of beautiful young girls, but Francis saw here the difference between beauty and perfection. All those endearing flaws, moles, birthmarks, and healed wounds were missing, and he experienced in his consciousness that moment when music breaks glass, and felt a pang of recognition as strange, deep, and wonderful as anything in his life. It hung from her frown, from an impalpable darkness in her face – a look that impressed him as a direct appeal for love. When she had counted her books, she came down the steps and opened the car door. In the light, he saw that her cheeks were wet. She got in and shut the door.

“You’re new,” Francis said.

“Yes, Mrs. Henlein is sick. I’m Anne Murchison.”

“Did the children give you any trouble?”

“Oh, no, no.” She turned and smiled at him unhappily in the dim dashboard light.

“You’ve been crying. I hope it was nothing that happened in our house.”

“No, no, it was nothing that happened in your house.” Her voice was bleak. “It’s no secret. Everybody in the village knows. Daddy’s an alcoholic, and he just called me from some saloon and gave me a piece of his mind. He thinks I’m immoral. He called just before Mrs. Weed came back.”

“I’m sorry.”

“Oh, Lord!” She gasped and began to cry. She turned toward Francis, and he took her in his arms and let her cry on his shoulder. “I live on Belleview Avenue,” she said. “You go down Lansing Street to the railroad bridge.”

“All right.” He started the car.

“You turn left at that traffic light... Now you turn right here and go straight on toward the tracks.”

The road Francis took brought him out of his own neighborhood, across the tracks, and toward the river, to a street where the near-poor lived. When he stopped the car, he opened the door on his side and walked around to open hers. He took her free hand and walked her towards the porch. At the steps, she freed her hand and then turned and kissed him swiftly. Then she crossed the porch and shut the door.

Julia was asleep when Francis got home. He opened a second window, got into bed, and dropped off to sleep.

PART 2

In the morning, Francis washed his body, shaved his jaws, drank his coffee, and missed the seven-thirty-one. The train pulled out just as he brought his car to the station, and the longing he felt for the coaches as they drew stubbornly away from him reminded him of the humors of love. He waited for the eight-two, on what was now an empty platform. Then old Mrs. Wrightson joined him on the platform and began to talk.

“Well, I guess you must be surprised to see me here the third morning in a row,” she said, “but because of my window curtains I’m becoming a regular commuter. The curtains I bought Monday I returned on Tuesday, and the curtains I bought Tuesday I’m returning today, because they are the wrong length. Now I’m praying to high Heaven that the decorator will have them in the right length, because you know my house, you know my living-room windows, and you can imagine what a problem they present. I don’t know what to do with them.”

“I know what to do with them,” Francis said.

“What?”

“Paint them black on the inside, and shut up.” There was a gasp from Mrs. Wrightson, and Francis looked down at her to be sure that she knew he meant to be rude. She turned and walked away from him, so damaged in spirit that she limped. A wonderful feeling enveloped him, as if light were being shaken about him. The

realization of how many years had passed since he had enjoyed being deliberately impolite sobered him. Among his friends and neighbors, there were brilliant and gifted people – he saw that – but many of them, also, were bores and fools, and he had made the mistake of listening to them all with equal attention. He had confused a lack of discrimination with Christian love, and the confusion seemed general and destructive. He was grateful to the girl for bracing sensation of independence. Birds were singing – cardinals and the last of the robins. The sky shone like enamel. Even the smell of ink from his morning paper honed his appetite for life, and the world that was spread out around him was plainly a paradise. . . . He did not know when he would see Anne next.

When he got home, he found her in the hall. Her back was to him, and she turned when she heard the door close. Her smile was open and loving. Her perfection stunned him like a fine day – a day after a thunderstorm. He seized her and covered her lips with his, and she struggled but she did not have to struggle for long, because just then Julia called down to him from upstairs to hurry and dress.

The thought that he would drive Anne Murchison home later that night ran like a golden thread through the events of the party that Francis and Julia went to, and he laughed uproariously at dull jokes, dried a tear when Mabel Mercer told him about the death of her kitten, and stretched, yawned, sighed, and grunted like any other man with a rendezvous at the back of his mind.

The Weeds were the last to leave the party. They drove home in silence. Francis brought the car up the driveway and sat still, with the motor running. “You can put the car in the garage,” Julia said as she got out. “I told the Murchison girl she could leave at eleven. Someone drove her home.” She shut the door, and Francis sat in the dark. He was so disappointed that looked pathetic; and he knew it – for he could see the image he now presented, his arms spread over the steering wheel and his head buried in them.

The next day at night, while Francis and Julia were drinking their coffee in the living room, the doorbell rang. Julia answered the door and let in Clayton Thomas. He had come to pay her for some theater tickets that she had given his mother some time ago, and that Helen Thomas had scrupulously insisted on paying for, though Julia had asked her not to. Julia invited him in to have a cup of coffee. “I won’t have

any coffee,” Clayton said, “but I will come in for a minute.” He followed her into the living room, said good evening to Francis, and sat awkwardly in a chair.

Clayton’s father had been killed in the war, and the young man’s fatherlessness surrounded him like an element. This may have been conspicuous in Shady Hill because the Thomases were the only family that lacked a piece; all the other marriages were intact and productive. Clayton was in his second or third year of college, and he and his mother lived alone in a large house, which she hoped to sell. Clayton had once made some trouble. Years ago, he had stolen some money and run away; he had got to California before they caught up with him. He was tall and homely, wore horn-rimmed glasses, and spoke in a deep voice.

“When do you go back to college, Clayton?” Francis asked.

“I’m not going back,” Clayton said. “Mother doesn’t have the money, and there’s no sense in all this pretense. I’m going to get a job, and if we sell the house, we’ll take an apartment in New York.” “Won’t you miss Shady Hill?” Julia asked. “No,” Clayton said. “I don’t like it.” “Why not?” Francis asked.

“Well, there’s a lot here I don’t approve of,” Clayton said gravely. “Things like the club dances. Last Saturday night, I looked in toward the end and saw Mr. Granner and Mrs. Minot. They were both drunk. I disapprove of so much drinking.”

“It was Saturday night,” Francis said.

“And all the dove-cotes are phony,” Clayton said. “And the way people clutter up their lives. I’ve thought about it a lot, and what seems to me to be really wrong with Shady Hill is that it doesn’t have any future. So much energy is spent in perpetuating the place – in keeping out undesirables, and so forth – that the only idea of the future anyone has is just more and more commuting trains and more parties. I don’t think that’s healthy. I think people ought to be able to dream big dreams about the future. I think people ought to be able to dream great dreams.”

“It’s too bad you couldn’t continue with college,” Julia said.

“I wanted to go to divinity school,” Clayton said.

“What’s your church?” Francis asked.

“Unitarian, Theosophist, Transcendentalist, Humanist,” Clayton said.

“Wasn’t Emerson a transcendentalist?” Julia asked.

“I mean the English transcendentalists,” Clayton said. “All the American transcendentalists were goops.”

“What kind of a job do you expect to get?” Francis asked.

“Well, I’d like to work for a publisher,” Clayton said, “but everyone tells me there nothing doing. But it’s the kind of thing I’m interested in. I’m writing a long verse play about good and evil. Uncle Charlie might get me into a bank, and that would be good for me. I need the discipline. I have a long way to go in forming my character. I have some terrible habits. I talk too much. I think I ought to take vows of silence. I ought to try not to speak for a week, and discipline myself. I’ve thought of making a retreat at one of the Episcopalian monasteries, but I don’t like Trinitarianism.”

“Do you have any girl friends?” Francis asked.

“I’m engaged to be married,” Clayton said. “Of course, I’m not old enough or rich enough to have my engagement observed or respected or anything, but I bought a simulated emerald for Anne Murchison with the money I made cutting lawns this summer. We’re going to be married as soon as she finishes school.”

Francis recoiled at the mention of the girl’s name. Then a dingy light seemed to emanate from his spirit, showing everything — Julia, the boy, the chairs — in their true colorlessness. It was like a bitter turn of the weather.

“We’re going to have a large family. Her father’s a terrible rummy, and I’ve had my hard times, and we want to have lots of children. Oh, she’s wonderful, Mr. and Mrs. Weed, and we have so much in common. We like all the same things. We sent out the same Christmas card last year without planning it, and we both have an allergy to tomatoes, and our eyebrows grow together in the middle. Well, good night.”

Julia went to the door with him.

PART 3 A

When she returned, Francis said that Clayton was lazy, irresponsible, affected, and smelly. Julia said that Francis seemed to be getting intolerant; the Thomas boy was young and should be given a chance. Julia had noticed other cases where Francis

had been short-tempered. "Mrs. Wrightson has asked everyone in Shady Hill to her anniversary party but us," she said.

"I'm sorry, Julia."

"Do you know why they didn't ask us?"

"Why?"

"Because you insulted Mrs. Wrightson."

"Then you know about it?"

"June Masterson told me. She was standing behind you."

Julia walked in front of the sofa with a small step that expressed, Francis knew, a feeling of anger.

"I did insult Mrs. Wrightson, Julia, and I meant to. I've never liked her parties, and I'm glad she's dropped us."

"What about Helen?"

"How does Helen come into all this?"

"Mrs. Wrightson's the one who decides who goes to the assemblies."

"You mean she can keep Helen from going to the dances?"

"Yes."

"I hadn't thought of that."

"Oh, I knew you hadn't thought of it," Julia cried, thrusting hilt-deep into this chink of his armor. "And it makes me furious to see this kind of stupid thoughtlessness wreck everyone's happiness."

"I don't think I've wrecked anyone's happiness."

"Mrs. Wrightson runs Shady Hill and has run it for the last forty years. I don't know what makes you think that in a community like this you can indulge every impulse you have to be insulting, vulgar, and offensive."

"I have very good manners," Francis said, trying to give the evening a turn toward the light.

"Damn you, Francis Weed!" Julia cried, and the spit of her words struck him in the face. "I've worked hard for the social position we enjoy in this place, and I won't stand by and see you wreck it. You must have understood when you settled here that

you couldn't expect to live like a bear in a cave."

"I've got to express my likes and dislikes."

"You can conceal your dislikes. You don't have to meet everything head-on, like a child. Unless you're anxious to be a social leper. It's no accident that we get asked out a great deal. It's no accident that Helen has so many friends. How would you like to spend your Saturday nights at the movies? How would you like to spend your Sundays raking up dead leaves? How would you like it if your daughter spent the assembly nights sitting at her window, listening to the music from the club? How would you like it – "He did something then that was, after all, not so unaccountable, since her words seemed to raise up between them a wall so deadening that he gagged: He struck her full in the face. She staggered and then, a moment later, seemed composed. She went up the stairs to their room. She didn't slam the door. When Francis followed, a few minutes later, he found her packing a suitcase.

"Julia, I'm very sorry."

"It doesn't matter," she said. She was crying.

"Where do you think you're going?"

"I don't know. I just looked at a timetable. There's an eleven-sixteen into New York. I'll take that."

"You can't go, Julia."

"I can't stay. I know that."

"I'm sorry about Mrs. Wrightson, Julia, and I'm"

"It doesn't matter about Mrs. Wrightson. That isn't the trouble."

"What is the trouble?"

"You don't love me."

"I do love you, Julia."

"No, you don't."

"Julia, I do love you, and I would like to be as we were – sweet and bawdy and dark – but now there are so many people."

"You hate me."

"I don't hate you, Julia."

“You have no idea of how much you hate me. I think it’s subconscious. You don’t realize the cruel things you’ve done.”

“What cruel things, Julia?”

“The cruel acts your sub-conscience drives you to in order to express your hatred of me.”

“What, Julia?”

“I’ve never complained.”

“Tell me.”

“You don’t know what you’re doing.”

“Tell me.”

“Your clothes.”

“What do you mean?”

“I mean the way you leave your dirty clothes around in order to express your subconscious hatred of me.”

“I don’t understand.”

“I mean your dirty socks and your dirty pajamas and your dirty underwear and your dirty shirts!” She rose from kneeling by the suitcase and faced him, her eyes blazing and her voice ringing with emotion. “I’m talking about the fact that you’ve never learned to hang up anything. You just leave your clothes all over the floor where they drop, in order to humiliate me. You do it on purpose!” She fell on the bed, sobbing.

“Julia, darling!” he said, but when she felt his hand on her shoulder she got up.

“Leave me alone,” she said, “I have to go.” She brushed past him to the closet and came back with a dress. “I’m not taking any of the things you’ve given me,” she said, “I’m leaving my pearls and the fur jacket.”

“Oh, Julia!” Her figure, so helpless in its self-deceptions, bent over the suitcase made him nearly sick with pity. She didn’t understand how desolate her life would be without him. She didn’t understand the hours that working women have to keep. She didn’t understand that most of her friendships existed within the framework of their marriage, and that without this she would find herself alone. She didn’t understand

about travel, about hotels, about money. “Julia, I can’t let you go! What you don’t understand, Julia, is that you’ve come to be dependent on me.”

She tossed her head back and covered her face with her hands. “Did you say that I was dependent on you?” she asked. “Is that what you said? And who is it that tells you what time to get up in the morning and when to go to bed at night? Who is it that prepares your meals and picks up your dirty clothes and invites your friends to dinner? If it weren’t for me, your neckties would be greasy and your clothing would be full of moth holes. You were alone when I met you, Francis Weed, and you’ll be alone when I leave. When Mother asked you for a list to send out invitations to our wedding, how many names did you have to give her? Fourteen!”

“Cleveland wasn’t my home, Julia.”

“And how many of your friends came to the church? Two!”

“Cleveland wasn’t my home, Julia.”

“Since I’m not taking the fur jacket,” she said quietly, “you’d better put it back into storage. There’s an insurance policy on the pearls that comes due in January. The name of the laundry and the maid’s telephone number – all those things are in my desk. I hope you won’t drink too much, Francis. I hope that nothing bad will happen to you. If you do get into serious trouble, you can call me.”

“Oh my darling, I can’t let you go!” Francis said. “I can’t let you go, Julia!” He took her in his arms.

“I guess I’d better stay and take care of you for a little while longer,” she said.

PART 3 B

Riding to work in the morning, Francis saw the girl walk down the aisle of the coach. He was surprised; he hadn’t realized that the school she went to was in the city, but she was carrying books, she seemed to be going to school. He followed her. Coming up to her and leaning down to speak to her, he saw that it was not Anne. Later that afternoon, Trace Bearden called. “Look, fellar,” Trace said. “I’m calling for Mrs. Thomas. You know? Clayton, that boy of hers, doesn’t seem able to get a

job, and I wondered if you could help. If you'd call Charlie Bell – I know he's indebted to you – and say a good word for the kid, I think Charlie would”.

“Trace, I hate to say this,” Francis said, “but I don't feel that I can do anything for that boy. The kid's worthless. I know it's a harsh thing to say, but it's a fact. Any kindness done for him would backfire in everybody's face. He's just a worthless kid, Trace, and there's nothing to be done about it. Even if we got him a job, he wouldn't be able to keep it for a week. I know that to be a fact. It's an awful thing, Trace, and I know it is, but instead of recommending that kid, I'd feel obliged to warn people against him – people who knew his father and would naturally want to step in and do something. I'd feel obliged to warn them. He's a thief...”

The moment this conversation was finished, Miss Rainey came in and stood by his desk. “I'm not going to be able to work for you any more, Mr. Weed,” she said. “I can stay until the seventeenth if you need me, but I've been offered a whirlwind of a job, and I'd like to leave as soon as possible.”

She went out, leaving him to face alone the wickedness of what he had done to the Thomas boy. The girl would be at the house when he got home. He would spend another evening among his kind neighbors, picking and choosing dead-end streets, cart tracks, and the driveways of abandoned houses. There was nothing to mitigate his feeling – nothing that laughter or a game of softball with the children would change – and, thinking back over the plane crash and Anne Murchison's difficulties with her drunken father, he wondered how he could have avoided arriving at just where he was. He was in trouble. He had been lost once in his life, coming back from a trout stream in the north woods, and he had now the same bleak realization that no amount of cheerfulness or hopefulness or valor or perseverance could help him find, in the gathering dark, the path that he'd lost. He smelled the forest. The feeling of bleakness was intolerable, and he saw clearly that he had reached the point where he would have to make a choice.

He could go to a psychiatrist, like Miss Rainey, his secretary; he could go to church and confess his lusts; he could go to a Danish massage parlor in the West Seventies that had been recommended by a salesman; or he could get drunk. He had the telephone number of Miss Rainey's doctor, and he called and asked for an immediate

appointment. He was insistent with the doctor's secretary – it was his manner in business — and when she said that the doctor's schedule was full for the next few weeks, Francis demanded an appointment that day and was told to come at five.

The psychiatrist's office was in a building that was used mostly by doctors and dentists, and the hallways were filled with the candy smell of mouthwash and memories of pain. Francis' character had been formed upon a series of private resolves – resolves about cleanliness, about going off the high diving board or repeating any other feat that challenged his courage, about punctuality, honesty, and virtue. To abdicate the perfect loneliness in which he had made his most vital decisions shattered his concept of character and left him now in a condition that felt like shock. He was stupefied. Francis gave his name and address to a secretary and then saw, at the side of the room, a policeman moving toward him. "Hold it, hold it," the policeman said. "Don't move. Keep your hands where they are."

"I think it's all right, officer," the secretary began. "I think it will be"

"Let's make sure," the policeman said, and he began to slap Francis' clothes, looking for what – pistols, knives, an icepick? Finding nothing, he went off, and the secretary began a nervous apology: "When you called on the telephone, Mr. Weed, you seemed very excited, and one of the doctor's patients has been threatening his life, and we have to be careful. If you want to go in now?" Francis pushed open a door connected to an electrical chime, and in the doctor's lair sat down heavily, blew his nose into a handkerchief, searched in his pockets for cigarettes, for matches, for something, and said hoarsely, with tears in his eyes, "I'm in love, Dr. Herzog."

It is a week or ten days later in Shady Hill. In the cellar of his house, Francis Weed is building a coffee table. Dr. Herzog recommended woodwork as a therapy, and Francis finds some true consolation in the simple arithmetic involved and in the holy smell of new wood. Francis is happy.

I. Language Focus

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1 A

1. mist – fog; a light cloud low over the ground that makes it difficult to see far

Within seconds he had completely disappeared in the mist.

2. density – the degree to which an area is filled with things or people

Can you name the areas of high population density in our country?

3. reflect – to show the image of smb/smith on the surface (e.g., a mirror, water or glass)

His face was reflected in the mirror.

She could see herself reflected in his eyes.

4. rock – to move or cause to move (backward and forward)

A sudden hurricane blew out our lights and rocked our house.

5. painkiller – a medicine which reduces or removes pain

She would scream if anyone came near her left arm, and she cried at night, begging for painkillers.

6. drop – to fall, especially from a high place; or to let smth. fall

The bottle rolled off the table and dropped to the floor.

One of the waiters tripped and dropped a tray full of food.

7. flounder – to vibrate severely; to throw oneself one way and the other

The sick horse floundered among the rocks and deep snow.

8. stale – smth. that is not fresh, thus not good to eat (bread) or unpleasant to breathe (air)

Their French bread is really good but it goes stale very quickly.

9. violence – behavior that is intended to hurt other people physically

There is too much sex and violence shown on television.

extreme force

the tremendous violence of a tornado

The bells rang violently through the house.

10. flicker – to burn / shine with an unsteady light that goes on and off quickly

Candles flickered on all the tables.

11. belly – a stomach

Everybody should go home with full bellies tonight.

rounded middle part of an object; fuselage

The plane hit flat on its belly. (= the plane landed horizontally, but without letting down a landing gear)

12. howl – to cry aloud, to sob violently

When George dropped the fridge they were carrying on his brother's foot, Tommy howled with pain.

13. anxious for / about smth. – worried, concerned about smth.

The counselors of King Charles were anxious for their own safety.

anxious for smth. / to do smth. – eager, having earnest desire

Martha is so anxious for success that she doesn't seem to care about anything else.

14. scatter (over) – separate in different directions

The animals calmed down and feeling safe scattered all over the valley.

15. pray – to talk to God; to beg, ask earnestly for smth.

He prayed that he might be forgiven.

16. explode – to burst with force and a loud noise, (to cause) to detonate

Even though the terrorist got everything he demanded, he exploded the bomb.

17. crew – a group of people associated together (e.g. managing the same ship or plane)

When I got on shore here, I found all my ship's crew drowned.

18. shelter – some type of protection, especially from the weather

The three poor distressed men sat down under the shelter of a great tree.

19. string (of) – a line or series of things arranged on a thread, or as if so arranged

a string of shells or beads, a string of houses, a string of arguments

We started to lose our patience, as the string of cars seemed never to end.

20. commuting train – a suburban train

I have to get up at 5:30 every morning to catch a commuting train to London.

commuter – smb. who travels a long distance to work every day

Other things being equal, commuters prefer lower money costs and faster travel.

21. crash – to fall (about a plane), wreck; break into pieces, smash

I've seen so many cars crashed this year that I'm no longer willing to get one of my own.

22. mild – of a considerate character; moderate in degree or quality; warm

I really enjoyed walking in the park this mild September afternoon.

23. fragrant – having an agreeable perfume, a sweet or pleasant scent

The lilacs gave off a fragrant aroma.

24. particularly – especially, in a way that is special and different from others

He was happy to see all of us, particularly his brother whom he hadn't seen for years.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. detonate, blow up, burst out, blast, go off _____

2. aromatic, odorous, perfumed, scented _____

eager, enthusiastic, ardent, impatient, yearning, zealous _____

4. gentle, pleasant, soft, not severe _____

5. spoiled, old, out of date, unventilated, stuffy _____

6. spread, disperse, distribute _____

7. protection, refuge, haven, sanctuary, asylum _____

8. thickness, concentration, compactness, closeness _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Everybody liked John for his _____ disposition.

A. stale B. mild C. haven D. scented

2. Don't you have anything to eat? I can see nothing here but a(n) _____ apple pie.

A. anxious B. stale C. gentle D. shelter

3. After two years in prison, Ken was _____ to see Julia.

A. fragrant B. anxious C. mild D. dense

4. My neighbor _____ in anger at his relatives and their uncontrollable children.

A. exploded B. sheltered C. scattered D. cured

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|---------------|
| 5. fragrant | A. unventilated | B. gentle | C. bleak | D. scented |
| 6. explode | A. look forward | B. go off | C. look up | D. go through |
| 7. scatter | A. disperse | B. blast | C. refuge | D. spill |
| 8. mild | A. moderate | B. stuffy | C. zealous | D. scented |

Part 1 B

- 1. affection** – a feeling of love and caring, tender attachment

She quickly won the children's affection.

- 2. be absorbed (in)** – to pay so much attention to smth. that you don't notice other things

For the next two hours she was absorbed in the film, which turned out to be as good as she had hoped.

- 3. scold (smb. for smth.)** – to angrily criticize smb. about smth. they have done

June scolded the boys for taking the candy without asking first.

- 4. bad language** – language that most people think is offensive, swearing

Even very young children are using bad language at school.

- 5. accuse (of smth.)** – to say that smb. has done smth. wrong or is guilty of smth.

She accused him of murder.

- 6. persecute (for smth)** – to treat cruelly or unfairly over a period of time

The Puritans left England to escape being persecuted by the King.

- 7. lot** – the part, or fate, which falls to one

She seems happy enough with her lot.

- 8. accidentally** – happening without being planned or intended, not meant to

I accidentally locked myself out of the house.

- 9. premature** – done too early or too soon

It would be premature to accuse anyone until the investigation is complete.

mature – behaving in a sensible way that you'd expect an adult to behave

She has become really mature in the last couple of years.

- 10. headquarters** – the main building or offices used by a large organization

The company has its headquarters in the suburbs.

11. lap – the upper part of your legs when you are sitting down

Shannon sat on her mother's lap and smiled happily.

12. drudgery – hard boring work

After two weeks Annie could not bear the endless drudgery of housework.

13. wit – the ability to say things that are clever and amusing

People love him for his wit and charm.

14. tremble – to shake slightly in a way that you cannot control

Ginna's whole body trembled as she spoke about her son's death.

(voice) to sound nervous and unsteady

Her voice trembled with fear.

15. gregarious – friendly, smb. who enjoys being with other people

Kim is gregarious and fun-loving.

16. spring (from) – have origin, start with

Most roommate conflicts spring from small irritating differences.

17. dread – strong fear of smth.

I felt a sense of dread as I walked into the interview.

18. insatiable – always wanting more and more of smth.

Her spoilt son had an insatiable appetite for attention.

19. brilliant – light or color that is very bright and strong

She closed her eyes against the brilliant light.

very successful, excellent

Jim had a long and brilliant career . The project was a brilliant success.

extremely clever or skillful

Paganini was a brilliant violinist, famous for his technical skill in both playing and composing music.

20. stoop – a porch, or small veranda, at a house door

My grandpa used to sit on the stoop every evening and greet all people walking past our house.

21. frowning – with an angry / confused expression made by moving eyebrows together

Matt stood frowning as he read the letter.

22. flaw – a mistake, mark, or weakness that makes smth. not perfect

The dress was half price because of a slight flaw.

23. mole – a small dark brown mark on the skin; a birthmark

She had a cute mole on her right cheek.

24. experience – to feel a particular emotion, pain, etc

You may experience some dizziness after taking the medicine.

25. dim – not bright

I was led through a dim hallway to his office. The old hopes have grown pale, the old fears dim.

26. bleak – without anything to make you feel cheerful or hopeful

It was a bleak November evening.

27. swiftly – happening quickly and immediately

Their victory was swift and decisive.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. go through, feel, undergo _____
2. dismay, terror, alarm, horror, fright _____
3. speedy, hasty, hurried, fast, rapid _____
4. harass, offend, hound, discriminate against, bully _____
5. reprimand, reproach, discipline, rebuke, tell off _____
6. love, fondness, warmth, care, tenderness, devotion _____
7. adult, full-grown, ripe, experienced _____
8. labor, toil, grind, chore _____
9. blame, charge, sue, allege, frame, indict, impeach _____
10. hopeless, dreary, depressing, cheerless, sad _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. It happened during the _____ year of the Depression.

- A. most brilliant B. swiftest C. most mature D. bleakest

2. She _____ real doubt on hearing the report. So, she called Jim to check it out.
- A. distributed B. exploded C. experienced D. flickered
3. Parents had to _____ their child for being rude.
- A. dread B. feel C. accuse D. scold
4. We lived in _____ of various disasters that could happen to us.
- A. drudgery B. dread C. scold D. affection
5. Like many celebrities, she complained of being _____ by the press.
- A. experienced B. absorbed C. persecuted D. cured
6. Modern labor-saving devices put an end to _____, but not work.
- A. drudgery B. dread C. affection D. evidence
7. Mel has developed into a _____, hard-working person.
- A. swift B. mature C. scold D. bleak
8. Their father never showed them much _____; he did love them, though.
- A. affection B. justification C. scold D. asylum
9. The carriage was running as _____ as the wind.
- A. mature B. anxious C. mild D. swift
10. Are you _____ me of lying?
- A. accusing B. affecting C. scolding D. exploding

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

dread swift accuse persecute scold
 experience drudgery bleak affection mature

1. The _____ of the coming creature made Kay freeze, which was his fatal mistake.
2. Don't _____ the Congress and the Senate. They are just children that never grow up. They don't like to be corrected in company.
3. If you want to look more intelligent, be _____ to hear, and slow to speak.

4. If you want to _____ a great adventure, go to Africa on a safari tour.
5. At that time, far away in Rome, Christians were being _____ by the Emperor Nero.
6. Penny seemed more _____ than other students, probably because she was older.
7. Bart had a deep _____ for the old man. He was like a father to the boy.
8. After decades of unappreciated _____, some women just don't do housework any more.
9. The government was _____ of incompetence.
10. Unfortunately, the outlook for jobs is _____ in our city right now.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. dread | A. labor | B. love | C. violence | D. horror |
| 2. accuse | A. undergo | B. commute | C. blame | D. drop |
| 3. mature | A. hurried | B. adult | C. absorbed | D. harassed |
| 4. drudgery | A. mole | B. violence | C. toil | D. lot |
| 5. scold | A. discipline | B. stretch | C. hound | D. charge |
| 6. bleak | A. cheerless | B. ripe | C. hasty | D. insatiable |
| 7. affection | A. hasty | B. chore | C. density | D. devotion |
| 8. experience | A. go off | B. go through | C. tell off | D. offend |
| 9. swift | A. dreary | B. rapid | C. scold | D. spoiled |
| 10. persecute | A. bully | B. impeach | C. undergo | D. rebuke |

Part 2

- 1. longing** – a strong feeling of wanting smth

His longing for peace and quiet explained why Henry lived in such seclusion.

- 2. in a row** – happening a number of times one after the other

That's the second year in a row we forgot her birthday.

- 3. limp** – to walk slowly and with difficulty because one leg is hurt or injured

He picked up his bag and limped back to the road.

4. deliberately – on purpose, intentionally or planned

Janet deliberately insulted him. She was so mad at him that she really wanted it to hurt.

He did it deliberately to annoy me.

5. confuse – to make smb. unable to think clearly or understand smth.

They confused me with conflicting stories of what happened.

if smb. confuses one thing with another, they think thing #1 is thing #2

You're confusing me with my sister – she's the one who moved to Colorado.

6. stun – to surprise smb. so much that they do not react immediately; to stupefy

Howard was stunned when Garrett rejected the offer.

stunning – extremely surprising or shocking

He suffered a stunning defeat in the election.

7. seize – to take firm hold of smb. or smth. suddenly and violently

"Come with me," said Nat, seizing him by the arm.

8. uproariously – very noisily

uproariously funny

The audience laughed uproariously.

9. stretch – to bring your arms, legs, or body to full length

Carl sat up in bed, yawned, and stretched.

He stretched his neck to see what was going on.

10. yawn – to open mouth wide and breathe in deeply, usually when tired or bored

The party was so boring that I couldn't help yawning.

11. pathetic – causing feelings of sadness or sympathy; smth. unsuccessful

I think it's pathetic that only half of the eligible voters tend to vote.

12. awkwardly – lacking grace or skill when moving

He's too awkward – he'll never be a good dancer.

13. lack – to have smth. missing or not enough

He's totally lacking a sense of humor.

14. intact – complete and in the original state

He emerged from the investigation with his reputation intact (= not damaged).

- 15. pretense** – a way of behaving that is intended to deceive people
He made no pretense of looking for work.
- 16. phony** – represented as real but actually false, and intended to deceive smb.
a phony Italian accent; a phony driver's license
- 17. clutter (up)** – to make smth. messy by filling or covering it with things
Piles of books and papers cluttered his desk.
Their apartment was cluttered up with photographs and books.
- 18. perpetuate** – to make a situation or attitude, especially a bad one, continue to exist
His view is that the welfare system helps to perpetuate failure and poverty.
- 19. divinity school** – a college where students study to become priests or ministers
The idea of going to a divinity school dwelt in his mind.
- 20. evil** – actions and behavior that are morally wrong and cruel
It's a classic tale about the struggle between good and evil.
- 21. vow** – a firm promise or decision to do smth.
They exchanged marriage vows in a Manhattan courthouse.
- 22. retreat** – time that you spend praying, studying, or thinking in a quiet place
a retreat for writers and artists
We're going on a retreat this weekend.
- 23. be engaged (to be married)** – publicly promising that you intend to marry smb.
They decided to get engaged.
- 24. recoil** – to make a sudden movement away from smth., esp. because of fear or disgust
Sun-worshippers might recoil in horror at the chilling winds and rough seas, but we loved the place.
- 25. emanate** – to come from or out of
Angry voices emanated from the next room.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. mess, litter, encumber, fill up _____

2. shrink back, back away, retreat, withdraw _____
3. grip, snatch, take hold of, grasp, clutch _____
4. intentionally, meant to, consciously _____
5. fraud, fake, bogus, counterfeit, spurious _____
6. complete, whole, integral, entire, undamaged _____
7. mix up, perplex, puzzle _____
8. startling, dramatic, astonishing, amazing, shocking _____
9. be short of, miss, need, require, be deficient in _____
10. feeble, sad, dismal, weak, worthless, miserable _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Most of the house remains _____ even after two hundred years.
 A. phony B. obvious C. intact D. bogus
2. She tried to _____ the gun from him.
 A. require B. recoil C. emanate D. seize
3. I think you must be _____ me with someone else.
 A. lacking B. confusing C. retreating D. cluttering me
4. He must have lied, as there was something _____ about his alibi.
 A. stunning B. phony C. complete D. evil
5. Napoleon's _____ defeat at the Waterloo became a major event in France.
 A. deliberate B. phony C. stunning D. evident
6. She's been _____ ignoring him all day.
 A. deliberately B. intactly C. phony D. recoil
7. At first he used to _____ in horror at the sight of the corpse.
 A. recoil B. seize C. mean to D. clutter up
8. Since they _____ fuel, their plans to arrive on time failed.
 A. pretended B. cluttered C. seized D. lacked
9. I don't want all these files _____ up my desk.
 A. lacking B. cluttering C. seizing D. confusing
10. The starving children were a(n) _____ sight.
 A. intact B. phony C. pathetic D. grabbing

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

clutter deliberately recoil confuse intact
phony stunning seize lack pathetic

1. She was arrested for passing _____ ten-dollar bills.
2. Linda was daydreaming when Jack came up to her. No wonder she _____ from his touch.
3. The terrorists _____ the airport in a surprise attack.
4. The desk was _____ with papers, but the chair behind it was vacant.
- 5 We received _____ news of his tragic death.
6. I know it sounds _____ , but I can't ride a bike.
7. As there were no signs that the fire had been set _____ , no one was to blame.
8. To our surprise, despite strict customs regulations the package arrived _____ .
9. Be careful not to _____ quantity with quality.
10. Kevin _____ a willingness to try new things.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. **confuse** A. puzzle B. back away C. fill up D. snatch
2. **deliberately** A. miserably B. intentionally C. awkwardly D. uproariously
3. **stunning** A. conscious B. insatiable C. entire D. startling
4. **recoil** A. stretch B. experience C. encumber D. shrink back
5. **phony** A. bogus B. scented C. miserable D. feeble
6. **seize** A. withdraw B. litter C. snatch D. puzzle
7. **clutter** A. fill up B. mix up C. perplex D. retreat
8. **intact** A. dismal B. fraud C. anxious D. complete
9. **pathetic** A. spurious B. dismal C. entire D. evil
10. **lack** A. litter B. limp C. require D. rebuke

Part 3 A

1. irresponsible – doing careless things without thinking about the possible bad results

When it comes to money, Dan is completely irresponsible.

2. short-tempered – easily becoming angry or impatient, easily losing temper

He tends to be very short-tempered when he's hungry.

3. anniversary – a date on which smth. special happened in a previous year

Yesterday was our twentieth wedding anniversary.

4. insult – to say or do smth. that offends smb.

He insulted the delegates by refusing to shake their hands.

5. drop – to decide not to include or use smb. or smth.

Morris has been dropped from the team.

6. wreck – to completely spoil or destroy smth. (plan, relationship, opportunity)

The two years in prison wrecked Jarvis' marriage.

7. run – to control a company, an organization, or system

Christina runs a restaurant in Houston.

8. indulge – to allow yourself to have or do smth. that you like

They went into town to indulge in some serious shopping.

9. settle – to make a place your permanent home

She settled in Vienna after her father's death.

10. rake (up) – to move a rake across a surface to make the soil level, gather dead leaves

They paid me \$20 to rake the leaves in their front yard.

11. unaccountable – very surprising and difficult to explain

For some unaccountable reason he was sure I would be successful.

opposite of **accountable**, i.e. responsible for one's actions

Someone must be held accountable for the killings.

12. stagger – to walk with weak unsteady steps, as if you are about to fall

Although badly hurt, she staggered to a phone.

13. composed – calm and in control of one's feelings

He remained perfectly composed and calm.

The witness was composed and sure of her story.

- 14. slam** – to (cause smth. to) move against a hard surface with force and a loud noise
The truck slammed into an oncoming car.
Ray slammed the door shut.
- 15. matter** – to be important or have an important effect on smb. or smth.
The children matter more to her than anything else in the world.
It doesn't matter to me what you do.
- 16. subconscious** – feelings that influence your behavior though you are not aware of them
Many advertisements work at a subconscious level.
- 17. sob** – to cry loudly while breathing in short, sudden bursts
My mother was sobbing uncontrollably.
- 18. desolate** – (of a person) feeling extremely sad and lonely
In desolate moments, we have benefited from prayer.
- 19.**
- 20. greasy** – covered in a lot of grease or oil
greasy fingers / marks / overalls
The sink was piled high with greasy dishes.
- 21. storage** – the space where things can be kept until you need to use them
Much of the art they've acquired is still in storage.
There's a lot of storage space in the loft.
- 22. insurance** – protection against something bad happening
At that time people had large families as an insurance against some children dying.
Many Americans cannot afford health insurance.
- 23. due** – expected to happen, be done, or arrive at a particular time
He's due to return to Britain on Thursday.
When is your baby due?
needed to be paid or given on a particular date; owed as a debt
I was assured that any money due me would be sent immediately.
My library books aren't due until next week.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. offensive, impolite, abusive, insolent _____
2. destroy, turn smth. into a complete write-off, shatter _____
3. empty, lonely, miserable, gloomy, lonesome _____
4. core, foundation, grounds, principles _____
5. payable, owed, unpaid, unsettled, owing, in arrears _____
6. liable, held responsible, blamed, answerable, obliged _____
7. nourish, cater, give in, entertain, please, favor, delight _____
8. stumble, reel, totter, lurch, sway, waver, zigzag, falter _____
9. intuitive, hidden, unintentional, involuntary, latent _____
10. inhabit, stay, dwell, abide, live, reside, lodge _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each item.

1. I was really hurt, but I managed to _____ the last few steps.
A. insult B. indulge C. settle D. stagger
2. Larry's mortgage payments are always _____ at the end of the month.
A. mitigated B. wreck C. due D. puzzled
3. After they got married, they _____ in Virginia.
A. abdicated B. settled C. wrecked D. favored
4. The report provides a _____ for further research.
A. framework B. perseverance C. wreck D. dead end
5. The thought that her husband did not want the baby made her feel _____.
A. abdicated B. desolate C. indulged D. unaccountable
6. A serious injury nearly _____ his career.
A. dued B. eased C. resolved D. wrecked
7. I consider it _____ when a young person calls me by my first name.
A. insulting B. confused C. accountable D. indulging
8. Politicians are ultimately _____ to the voters.
A. desolate B. abdicated C. accountable D. insulting

9. The inheritance enabled him to _____ his passion for art.
 A. indulge B. desolate C. determine D. wreck
10. On some _____ level he wants to make her miserable.
 A. accountable B. insulting C. subconscious D. desolate

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

insulting framework due subconscious desolate
 accountable wreck indulge stagger settle

1. We explore new approaches within existing _____ of practice and thinking.
2. Patting a woman on the head can be _____ .
3. The state spends taxpayers' money, so it should be held _____ .
4. She has never been one to _____ in gossip.
5. Have they been paid the money that is _____ to them?
6. The weather _____ all our plans.
7. The death of her friend made her feel _____ .
8. His _____ hostility toward women clearly shows in the report.
9. The drunk _____ across the road, talking loudly to nobody.
10. Many Jewish immigrants _____ in the Lower East Side.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- 1. desolate** A. longing B. liable C. lonely D. harsh
- 2. wreck** A. moderate B. entertain C. cater D. destroy
- 3. indulge** A. please B. ease C. resign D. react
- 4. due** A. amazed B. liable C. sobbing D. owing
- 5. insulting** A. liable B. indebted C. impolite D. in arrears
- 6. framework** A. principles B. delights C. storage D. shatter
- 7. accountable** A. empty B. responsible C. payable D. insolent
- 8. settle** A. ground B. dwell C. lurch D. sob

9. **subconscious** A. unintentional B. abusive C. unsettled D. lonesome
10. **stagger** A. threaten B. dwell C. shatter D. totter

Part 3 B

1. **aisle** – a passage between rows of seats in a church, theatre, train, or plane

Jack didn't particularly like aisle seats.

2. **lean** – to bend or move from an upright position

A man was leaning out of the window.

3. **indebted (to smb)** – to be obliged to smb. for the help they have given you

Marcus feels indebted to the school for giving him a scholarship.

4. **worthless** – having no value, importance, or use

It was a completely worthless exercise.

5. **harsh** – cruel, or strict, or not nice

They suspended him? That seems pretty harsh.

The movie has received harsh criticism from the press.

6. **backfire** – to have the opposite effect to the one intended, with bad results

Her attempt to set him up backfired.

7. **whirlwind** – a situation in which a lot of things happen very quickly

I had been running around southern England in a whirlwind of activity.

8. **wickedness** – a quality that makes people enjoy behaving in a very bad/immoral way

We sensed a wickedness in him that made us feel sick inside.

9. **dead end** – a street closed at one end; a situation that leads nowhere

Jim drove into a dead-end street and had to back out.

He's in a dead-end job in the local factory (= one with low wages and no hope of promotion).

10. **abandon** – to leave smb. or smth. permanently

The 9-year-old boy was abandoned by his alcoholic father.

The volcano eruption forced the U.S. to abandon Clark Air Force Base.

11. **mitigate** – to make smth. less bad, harmful, or serious

We have to figure out a way to mitigate the costs.

- 12. perseverance** – the quality of continuing to try to achieve the aim despite difficulties
The only way to improve is through hard work and perseverance.
- 13. intolerable** – impossible to put up with, too difficult to deal with
Living conditions at the farm worker's camp were intolerable.
- 14. confess** – to admit that you have done smth. wrong or illegal
An army captain confessed that he recruited soldiers to smuggle cocaine.
- 15. appointment** – a formal arrangement to meet or visit smb. at a particular time
I've got a dental appointment at 3 o'clock.
- 16. resolve** – strong determination to succeed in doing smth.
Recent events strengthened her resolve to find out the truth.
- 17. challenge** – to test smb.'s ability and skills, especially in an interesting way
The job doesn't really challenge her.
- 18. virtue** – behavior that shows high moral standards; a particular good quality or habit
He led a life of virtue.
Patience is not one of her virtues, I'm afraid.
- 19. abdicate** – to refuse to be responsible for smth., when you should be or were before
The federal government has largely abdicated its responsibility in dealing with housing needs.
- 20. vital** – extremely important and necessary for smth. to succeed or exist
We view this partnership as vital to achieving our goals.
Regular exercise is vital for your health.
- 21. shatter** – to completely destroy smb.'s hopes or beliefs
Our lives were completely shattered by the accident.
- 22. stupefied** – so surprised, tired, or bored that you cannot think clearly
Foreman looked stupefied by the results of the test.
- 23. threaten** – to say you'll cause smb. pain or trouble if they don't do what you want
He threatened to punch me in the mouth.
Don't you threaten me!
- 24. careful** – trying very hard to avoid doing anything wrong or damaging or losing smth.
The press must be very careful about how information is presented.

25. hoarsely – (a person or voice) sounding harsh, especially because of a sore throat
a hoarse cough / cry / scream

His voice was hoarse with exhaustion.

26. cellar – a room under a house or other building, often used for storing things

I'm going to buy a vineyard and build a wine cellar.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. recoil, react, boomerang, disappoint _____
2. alleviate, ease, moderate, diminish _____
3. resolve, firmness, steadfastness, insistence _____
4. resign, step down, abandon, give up _____
5. baffled, dazed, bewildered, stunned, startled, confused _____
6. make up one's mind, determine, solve, settle, work out _____
7. cul-de-sac, blind alley, stalemate, impasse _____
8. admit, disclose, reveal, spill the beans, divulge, blurt out _____
9. provoke, stimulate, confront, face, dare, question, test _____
10. alert, cautious, wary, vigilant, apprehensive, chary _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each item.

1. Woods was released from jail after the real murderers _____ .
A. abandoned B. confessed C. resolved D. alleviated
2. They showed great _____ in the face of difficulty.
A. whirlwind B. foundation C. insult D. perseverance
3. Soil erosion was _____ by the planting of trees.
A. confused B. stupefied C. resigned D. mitigated
4. He was _____ by the amount they had spent.
A. stupefied B. miserable C. due D. obliged
5. Be patient and the situation may _____ itself.
A. cater B. resolve C. mitigate D. recoil

6. The negotiations have reached a _____ .
 A. dearth B. retreat C. dead end D. vow
7. Mrs. Eastman _____ her students to try new things.
 A. challenges B. virtues C. leans D. confesses
8. I hope this scheme doesn't _____ on us.
 A. alleviate B. resolve C. backfire D. abdicate
9. Consumers need to be _____ with which insurance policies they buy.
 A. abandoned B. wicked C. stupefied D. careful
10. I think you _____ your responsibility if you don't vote.
 A. abdicate B. backfire C. mitigate D. indulge

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

dead end careful mitigate resolve perseverance
 backfire confess stupefied abdicate challenge

1. Unfortunately the plan _____ , and we ended up in jail.
2. Mike _____ me to a game of chess and won.
3. She was forced to _____ the throne of Spain.
4. This line of investigation could prove to be a complete _____ .
5. Attempts are being made to _____ the problem of security in schools.
6. Captain Benson praised his men's courage and _____ in a dangerous situation.
7. Getting a lot of sleep and drinking plenty of water can _____ the effects of the flu.
8. He was _____ to learn that he was fired.
9. Having no choice Edwards _____ to being a spy for the KGB.
10. Grandma ought to be more _____ who she lets into her apartment.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. **abdicate** A. crash B. boomerang C. alleviate D. resign
2. **mitigate** A. react B. diminish C. reveal D. divulge

3. careful	A. virtue	B. stunned	C. vigilant	D. cul-de-sac
4. dead end	A. mess	B. stalemate	C. insistence	D. daze
5. backfire	A. shatter	B. resign	C. recoil	D. baffle
6. resolve	A. work out	B. give up	C. keep out	D. work up
7. perseverance	A. virtue	B. storage	C. whirlwind	D. steadfastness
8. stupefied	A. indebted	B. solved	C. stunned	D. disappointed
9. confess	A. admit	B. determine	C. abandon	D. confuse
10. challenge	A. divulge	B. dare	C. solve	D. settle

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Part 1

1. run into – to start to experience a difficult or unpleasant situation

He ran into criticism after remarks he made in a television interview.

to meet smb. by chance

To get out of Mexico would lessen her chances of running into Fernando.

2. go out – to stop giving off light or burning

Put more wood on the fire or it will go out.

to leave your house, especially in order to enjoy yourself:

Are you going out tonight?

3. file out – to leave / go out one by one

When there is a fire, it is important that people file out of the building in an orderly way.

4. pull out – to leave (about trains)

We reached the station too late, just as the train was pulling out.

to take smth out

Before I could see what he was doing, he had pulled out the gun.

5. come down – (of an aircraft) land or fall from the sky

The plane came down safely in spite of the mist.

6. pick up – to lift smth. up from a surface

During the morning Mrs. Carter picked up sticks in the yard.

7. throw in smth. – to mention some additional information, say suddenly a remark

She threw in a couple of strange remarks about men.

8. go through – to look at or examine smth. carefully

She went through the company's accounts, looking for evidence of fraud.

9. get in – to be allowed / able to enter a place, go inside

I'd like to get in to see "The Tonight Show" in September.

Give me a few minutes, and I'm sure I can get you in.

10. come back – to return

You came back very late last night.

11. drop off – to begin to sleep, to fall asleep

The baby dropped off to sleep in the car.

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| 1. throw in | a. enter a place |
| 2. pick up | b. attack |
| 3. come down | c. leave the station |
| 4. drop off | d. lift |
| 5. go out | e. land |
| 6. get in | f. meet by chance |
| 7. run into | g. add a remark |
| 8. turn on | h. fall asleep |
| 9. go through | i. leave the house |
| 10. pull out | j. examine |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. The door was locked, and he couldn't enter.
2. I fell asleep and missed the end of the film.
3. Is the train going to leave soon?
4. We were forced to land in a field.
5. She usually does not stay home on weekends.

6. Greg took his daughter and put her on his shoulders.
7. I met Mike on Seventh Avenue.
8. Jack added the odd encouraging comment.
9. Why are you all blaming me?
10. I always start the day by examining my mail.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. A light plane _____ somewhere in the jungle in South America.
2. The last train to New York is already _____. Hurry up!
3. Of course, I could _____ ideas but I knew he didn't need them.
4. Could you _____ my homework before I hand it in?
5. By the way, we _____ Ruth Ann this morning.
6. How did the burglars _____? Did they break a window?
7. The show was so boring that I _____ in the middle of it.
8. The vacuum cleaner won't _____ this stuff _____.
9. We _____ for dinner a couple of times.
10. Without warning, Franny _____ him, kicking and screaming.

Parts 2 & 3

1. shut up – to stop talking or be quiet, or to make smb. do this

Tell her to do the dishes. Maybe this will shut her up.

2. spread out – to cover or stretch over a large area

Before we start the exercises I want you all to spread out.

Edwin was studying the law books he had spread out on the dining room table.

3. catch up with smb. – to find smb. who has been doing smth. illegal and punish them

The law caught up with him years later when he had moved to Spain.

to reach the same level as the others

He's working hard to catch up with the others after missing a term.

4. keep smb. out – to prevent smb. / smth. from entering a place

Keep that dog out of my study!

You ought to close the lid to keep the ants out.

5. come into smth. – to be involved in smth. or influence it, to have to do with smth.

John came into the business as an equal partner.

That is where the Baroque influence comes in.

6. keep smb. from smth. – to prevent smb. from doing smth.

What kept you from doing it?

Put the pizza on the bottom rack of the oven to keep the cheese from burning.

7. stand by – to be present while smth bad is happening but not do anything to stop it

How can you stand by and see him accused of something he didn't do?

8. ask smb. out – to invite smb. to go out with you, especially on a date

This is the third time he's asked me out.

9. come up (to smb.) – to move towards smb., in order to talk to them, approach

Come up to the front of the room so everyone can see you.

10. step in – to help smb. in a dispute or difficult situation

The government may have to step in to settle the disagreement between the union and the employers.

11. go off – to leave a place, especially in order to do smth.

Why did the painter leave his family and go off to live on a tropical island?

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. ask out | a. help |
| 2. come into | b. cover the area |
| 3. keep from | c. stop talking |
| 4. catch up with | d. leave |
| 5. spread out | e. move closer |
| 6. shut up | f. have to do with |
| 7. step in | g. invite |
| 8. come up (to) | h. find and punish |
| 9. stand by | i. be present and do nothing |
| 10. go off | j. prevent |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. I've been invited to a dance on Saturday.
2. Alex hadn't paid taxes in five years, and the IRS finally found him.
3. I don't know if racism influences it.
4. The police took accounts of the accident from two witnesses who happened to be there at the time of the crash.
5. She left to get a drink.
6. George moved closer and introduced himself to us.
7. The church bells didn't let me sleep.
8. I wish Ted would stop talking about that stupid bike.
9. The valley covered a large area in front of me.
10. A local businessman helped with a large donation for the school.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. He _____ me and asked for a light.
2. At the end of this scene, the murderer _____, hearing the police arrive.
3. He's too shy to _____ her _____.
4. I hope I'm not _____ you _____ your work.
5. If the dispute continues, the government will have to _____.
6. I've worked very hard to pass this exam – luck doesn't _____ it.
7. Shepherds work hard, as sheep tend to _____ all over the pasture.
8. The police _____ the thieves.
9. They will not _____ and let you take away their homes.
10. When they'd finally _____, I resumed the lecture.

C. IDIOMS

Parts 1 – 3

1. go to sleep – to become numb

After sitting on the coach for hours without moving, she realized that both her legs had gone to sleep.

- 2. make an emergency landing** – to land a plane due to an unexpected, dangerous situation
“Mayday! Mayday! We caught on fire! Trying to make an emergency landing...”
- 3. nine times of ten** – used to say that smth. is usually true or almost always happens
Nine times out of ten she gives the right answer.
- 4. set the table** – put knives, forks, etc on a table before a meal
Setting the table for the whole family three times a day is not that easy, when all the relatives come.
- 5. give smb. trouble / make trouble** – cause problems
Our new network software has been giving us a lot of trouble.
Fans who make trouble during the World Cup will be severely dealt with.
be in trouble / get into trouble – have problems
Joseph often got into trouble for not doing his homework.
My brother's in trouble with the police again.
- 6. give smb. a piece of one's mind** – to tell smb. how angry you are with them
If one of the kids is being sassy, Inez gives them a piece of her mind.
- 7. in spirit** – in your thoughts
I shall be with you in spirit.
- 8. at the back of .**
- 9. answer the door** – open the door when hearing smb. knock at it or ring the doorbell
I knocked on the door but nobody answered.
- 10. have a long way to go** – to need to make a lot of progress
She still has a long way to go before she's fully fit.
- 11. make money** – to earn money; to make a profit
The movie should make money.
There's money to be made from tourism.
- 12. turn of the weather** – change of the weather, especially becoming cold or worse
Residents used other words to describe the recent turn of the weather, such as "draining" yet "hot."
- 13. have smth. in common (with smb.)** – to have the same features, characteristics
Terry and I have a lot in common.

All these companies have one thing in common: they deal in small, inexpensive consumer items.

14. meet smth. head-on – to deal with smth. in a direct and determined way

Even companies that had family policies did not address the ethical issues head-on.

15. make sure – to check that smth. is true or has been done

She looked around to make sure that she was alone.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

got into trouble	give him a piece of my mind
set the table	giving me a lot of trouble
much in common	nine times out of ten
a long way to go	at the back of my mind

1. _____ stories like that are made up.
2. _____ was a small, warning voice, telling me it was wrong.
3. I do not have _____ with the other kids in high school. We are too different.
4. Despite the progress in recent months, we still have _____ .
5. Usually husbands help to neither _____ nor do the dishes.
6. My back is hurting again. It's been _____ lately.
7. I'm fed up with the noise he's making! I'm going to _____ .
8. The pilots _____ when they lost radio contact with the airport.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. A fire started in the cargo area, and the pilot was forced to _____ an emergency landing.
2. It's not fair but what can we _____ about it?
3. Do you _____ decent money in that line of work?
4. Finally Jim _____ the choice, but it happened to be the wrong one.
5. His words _____ me furious.

6. I'd like to _____ something good for mankind but I don't know where to start.
7. I'll go back and _____ sure I closed the window.
8. Is there anything I can _____ for you?
9. Look at how I'm sewing and then _____ the same.
10. Rick is always _____ trouble at school.
11. We _____ the mistake of asking Tim to take care of our plants while we were away.
12. What _____ you think he's going to fail the exams?
13. I'll walk you home to _____ sure no one bothers you.

D. WORD STUDY

TREAT – CURE – HEAL

1. treat – to give smb. treatment, using drugs, hospital care (in case of a disease or injury)

The former President is in Bethesda Medical Hospital where he is being treated for liver condition.

Doctors began treating AIDS patients with the drug AZT in the mid-eighties.

2. cure – to treat smb. who has an illness/disease and make him completely well again

The book is full of herbal remedies which can supposedly cure people of all manner of ailments.

3. heal – to treat smb. who has a cut or wound and make it completely better

The seawater is now so polluted it would infect rather than heal an open wound.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. Although doctors can treat AIDS, they cannot yet _____ it.
2. The doctor said the cut should _____ soon, and there won't be a scar.
3. Some sleep problems can be temporarily _____ with sleeping pills.
4. Many cancer victims can be _____ if the disease is detected early enough.
5. This cream is used for _____ minor cuts and bruises.
6. The drug is used to _____ hard disease.

7. The usual way of _____ malaria is to give the patient quinine.
8. Some US hospitals refuse to _____ people who don't have medical insurance.
9. In the old days they thought that tuberculosis could be _____ by giving people lots of fresh mountain air.
10. A sprain usually takes longer to _____ than a broken bone.

HURT – ACHE – BE SORE

1. hurt – to cause physical pain to smb. or to part of one's body

Ow! Stop that. You're hurting me!

I think the real reason he plays ice hockey is that he enjoys hurting people!

The stony ground hurts my feet but I keep going.

to feel pain in part of one's body

Can't we stop for a while; we've been walking for hours and my feet are hurting.

2. ache – feel a continuous, but not very strong, pain

Their shoulders ached, but the farmer made them carry on unloading the sacks of corn.

3. be sore – to hurt when you touch or use it (a sensitive part of your body, often red)

Diane scrubbed her hands so hard, she made them sore.

Grandma always used to give us Syrup of Honeysuckle when we had sore throats.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. He had been in a fight and his jaw _____ badly.
2. His eyes looked red and _____, as though he had been rubbing them.
3. I was trying so hard to keep smiling that my face _____.
4. I went to an aerobics class on Sunday and I've been _____ ever since.
5. I'm going to give you a quick injection; don't worry, it won't _____ at all.
6. It _____ if you get smacked in the mouth, believe me!
7. My feet were so _____ I sat down by a tree and pulled off my boots.
8. Put the stick down, Terry. You might _____ someone with it.

9. The noise and heat of the market made my head _____ .
10. He put on his sunglasses to stop the sun from _____ his eyes.

JOURNEY – TRIP – VOYAGE – TOUR

1. journey – an act of traveling from one place to another, especially to a place that is far away

I've made you some sandwiches for your journey.

2. trip – the act of traveling to a place (especially for a short time) and coming back

Did you have a good trip?

a school trip to the seaside

3. voyage – a long journey on a boat or ship

The voyage from Europe was a hazardous undertaking, with heavy seas and strong winds.

4. tour – a planned journey when a person or a group visits several different places, usually within a fixed period of time

The King has left for a six-week tour of Australia and New Zealand.

a short trip through a place to see it (usually with a guide)

We were given a guided tour of the palace.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. He had plenty of time to think of excuses during his _____ to Tokyo.
2. I was feeling tired after my two-day _____ to New York.
3. It's a lovely day, how about going on a boat _____ ?
4. It's an exhausting twelve-hour _____ to Kabul by road.
5. The Prince will visit Boston on the last part of his American _____ .
6. The Titanic sank on its maiden (= first) _____ .
7. Valerie didn't like long _____s because she suffered from seasickness.
8. She's gone on a business _____ and won't be back until Tuesday.
9. We have a very long train _____ ahead of us.
10. We asked to include Lhasa as one of the cities visited on our _____ .

– **MAKE** –

1. make for – travel towards

Sue made for the snack bar while Brian bought tickets.

2. make of – have opinion about smth.

He smiled, not quite sure what to make of my comments.

3. make off – run away

The boys made off when they saw the policemen.

4. make out – manage to understand, see, hear clearly

Can you make out what the man with the lawn-mower is saying?

I can't make out why he isn't here yet.

write a check

Shall I make it out to Johnson & Johnson Co.?

5. make up – invent

In an improvisation, I get the rhymes first and then make up the rest.

Oh, she wouldn't make up a story like that.

use cosmetics

Most women make up their faces.

They made him up to look like he was dead.

compose, form

The audience was made up of very young children.

Protons and neutrons are made up of smaller components called quarks.

end a quarrel

Isn't it time you and Ann made up your quarrel?

6. make up for – compensate for

You'll have to work very hard today to make up for the time you wasted yesterday.

How are you going to make up for being late?

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. Actors have to be made _____ before they appear on stage.

2. As soon as Jim climbed over the jail wall, he made _____ in a getaway car.
3. I think they just fight because they like to make _____ .
4. Come, Watson, and tell me what you make _____ this gentleman.
5. I can't make _____ the address, he has written it so badly.
6. I don't believe your story at all. You're just making it _____ .
7. I'm trying to make _____ the time I lost while I was sick.
8. Many in the crowd could hardly make _____ what he was saying, as he spoke without a microphone.
9. The escaped prisoner was making _____ the coast.
10. In Los Angeles, minority groups make _____ 64% of the population.
11. Who shall I make the check _____ to?
12. The bus driver was speeding to make _____ for lost time.

E. REVISION

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. A free market economy operates within a _____ of minimal state intervention.
 A. storage B. crew C. framework D. shelter
2. As director, she knew she would be held _____ for any budget deficit.
 A. pathetic B. brilliant C. accountable D. absorbed
3. Excellent marks are a result of hard work and _____ .
 A. density B. perseverance C. lack D. anniversary
4. He gave me a _____ name and address.
 A. sore B. bleak C. fragrant D. phony
5. He later _____ that he had been involved in the attack.
 A. exploded B. confused C. persecuted D. confessed
6. He might be _____ a secret from me.
 A. scattering B. experiencing C. concealing D. leaning
7. He never raised his voice or _____ me unfairly.

- A. wrecked B. howled C. scolded D. exploded
8. He obviously has a great _____ for Italy and its people.
A. scatter B. affection C. crash D. mist
9. He _____ in horror from the savagery which he witnessed.
A. recoiled B. retreated C. indulged D. resolved
10. His image as party leader has survived the crisis _____.
A. intact B. sore C. anxious D. indulged
11. I always feel stiff and _____ after gardening.
A. ardent B. absorbed C. swift D. sore
12. I don't want to _____ him of telling lies.
A. confess B. backfire C. stagger D. accuse
13. It might be several months before she is fully _____.
A. challenged B. cured C. confessed D. abdicated
14. My behavior very nearly _____ our relationship.
A. seized B. persecuted C. wrecked D. sobbed
15. She has no right to be _____ with us like that.
A. insulting B. desolate C. brilliant D. intact
16. That wasn't a very _____ thing to do. In fact, it was pretty childish.
A. intact B. sore C. stale D. mature
17. The survey paints a _____ picture of an ill and ageing population.
A. submissive B. bleak C. gregarious D. fragrant
18. The President's final decision came with _____ suddenness.
A. insatiable B. intact C. stunning D. sore
19. They made an attempt to _____ the unfavorable reaction.
A. confess B. mitigate C. matter D. commute
20. We are _____ to hear from anyone who can help.
A. stunning B. brilliant C. anxious D. stale
21. We built a temporary _____ out of branches.
A. perseverance B. commuter C. shelter D. drudgery

22. When he _____ his duty to protect the boy, it was the end of his career.
 A. abdicated B. persecuted C. recoiled D. commuted
23. Wrap the bread up well or it'll go _____ .
 A. stale B. stunning C. fragrant D. swift
24. You did that _____ , just to annoy me.
 A. desolately B. deliberately C. greasily D. _____
 accountably

2. Complete each sentence with a word in the box.

stale	sore	perseverance	affection
abdicate	phony	confess	mitigate
deliberately	mature	scold	insulting

1. He _____ he didn't understand financial matters at all.
2. He _____ his daughter for keeping them waiting.
3. He's more _____ than the other boys in the class.
4. Her eyes were _____ from studying all night.
5. I found his comments deeply _____ .
6. I suddenly realized he'd shown me a _____ ID.
7. Inside the flat the air was _____ , as if nobody had been there in a long time.
8. Only international cooperation can _____ environmental damage.
9. Police believe the fire was started _____ .
10. The government cannot _____ responsibility for national security.
11. She's very reserved. That's why she has difficulty showing _____ .
12. Police negotiators will work with _____ to free the hostages.

3. Complete each sentence with a word in the box.

framework	shelter	accuse	stunning
cure	conceal	recoil	bleak
wreck	accountable	intact	anxious

1. Many formerly fatal diseases can now be _____ .
2. She claims that her employers _____ her of theft.
3. The council is _____ to the people who elected it.
4. She was taking drugs and trying to _____ it from me.
5. The town has been _____ by the bombing.
6. A university had some independence, within a legal _____ laid down by the state.
7. The view from the top of the hill is _____ .
8. They found _____ for the night in a cave.
9. Things look pretty _____ for the team. They are unlikely to win.
10. This great Victorian house will be preserved _____ and opened to the public.
11. We were all _____ for peace.
12. When he touched the man's arm he _____ in horror, for it was cold and rigid.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. perseverance | A. passion | B. insistence | C. stalemate | D. density |
| 2. recoil | A. backfire | B. experience | C. confuse | D. abandon |
| 3. stale | A. unintentional | B. uneasy | C. unventilated | D. stunning |
| 4. affection | A. steadfastness | B. tenderness | C. challenge | D. shelter |
| 5. deliberately | A. completely | B. miserably | C. consciously | D. mildly |
| 6. shelter | A. dread | B. cul-de-sac | C. toil | D. refuge |
| 7. anxious | A. enthusiastic | B. bleak | C. desolate | D. mild |
| 8. accountable | A. bleak | B. blamed | C. stunning | D. gentle |
| 9. framework | A. sanctuary | B. drudgery | C. grounds | D. shatter |
| 10. cure | A. heal | B. stagger | C. scold | D. dread |
| 11. intact | A. impolite | B. indebted | C. insolent | D. undamaged |
| 12. scold | A. reprimand | B. divulge | C. shrink | D. puzzle |
| 13. phony | A. whole | B. fraud | C. abusive | D. desolate |
| 14. wreck | A. seize | B. tell off | C. blame | D. shatter |
| 15. conceal | A. withdraw | B. settle | C. hurry | D. hide |
| 16. abdicate | A. abuse | B. abandon | C. blame | D. scatter |

17. confess	A. spoil	B. hound	C. reveal	D. charge
18. mature	A. subconscious	B. tranquil	C. experienced	D. dismal
19. sore	A. aching	B. mild	C. lonely	D. messy
20. mitigate	A. aggravate	B. alleviate	C. shatter	D. resolve
21. insulting	A. pathetic	B. insolent	C. payable	D. startling
22. stunning	A. lonesome	B. careful	C. absorbed	D. dramatic
23. accuse	A. frame	B. resolve	C. indulge	D. discipline
24. bleak	A. bogus	B. dreary	C. bold	D. blast

5. Choose the word opposite in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. intact	A. due	B. broken	C. responsible	D. careful
2. phony	A. desolate	B. real	C. payable	D. stupefied
3. confess	A. confuse	B. mitigate	C. scatter	D. deny
4. anxious	A. scented	B. insulting	C. eager	D. unwilling
5. affection	A. kindness	B. persecution	C. aversion	D. storage
6. stale	A. fragrant	B. spoilt	C. ripe	D. entire
7. deliberately	A. intentionally	B. accidentally	C. swiftly	D. awkwardly
8. accuse	A. acquit	B. charge	C. abdicate	D. complete
9. conceal	A. confuse	B. hide	C. reveal	D. seize
10. mature	A. phony	B. childish	C. ripe	D. stunning

PHRASAL VERBS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. A car is _____ of many different parts.
2. Collins _____ every legal book she could find.
3. Don't believe him. He _____ that story _____.
4. Guess who I _____ this morning?
5. I just _____ a few comments occasionally.
6. I wanted the evenings free for _____ with friends.

7. Marion's friendly one minute and cold as ice the next. I just can't _____ her _____ .
8. She hopes he'll _____ her _____ .
9. He saw the letter on the floor, _____ and read it.
10. She usually _____ in front of the telly.
11. The play was so boring I could hardly _____ myself _____ falling asleep.
12. The rays of the sinking sun _____ across the horizon.
13. The team coach was forced to _____ to stop the two athletes from coming to blows.
14. Then the warriors _____ each other, for a fight to the death.
15. While I was waiting for the bus, a man _____ and started asking questions.

IDIOMS

7. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. The two cultures have a lot _____ .
2. The children didn't _____ me any _____ at all when we were out.
3. I _____ for being late. The teacher was really mad at me.
4. _____ , she knew he was lying.
5. I know I asked you before, but I wanted to _____ that I've understood you correctly.
6. The country has _____ before it is stable again.
7. I can't believe their dog is in my garden again! I'm going to _____ .
8. It's dinner time. Who's going to _____ today?
9. Jim is really good at shooting. He hits the bull's eye _____ .
10. He used to _____ illegally, by selling stolen stuff.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *un-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *dis-*.

___clear	___natural	___dependent	___polite
___desirable	___flexible	___experienced	___equal
___mature	___surprised	___approving	___tolerant
___prepared	___conscious	___responsible	___moral
___damaged	___healthy	___productive	___happy

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. Croatia became an _____ nation in 1991.
2. Dennis is _____ about having to work on a Saturday.
3. Eating all that junk food is really _____ .
4. He admitted being _____ of blacks and Jews in his youth.
5. Her _____ parents refused to attend her wedding.
6. I think Jim's too _____ to live on his own.
7. _____ drivers often have car accidents, even if they try to drive carefully.
8. It is _____ not to eat what you are served at a dinner party.
9. It is still _____ why he bought the gun in the first place.
10. It was very cold, which seemed _____ for late spring.
11. It would be highly _____ to increase class sizes further.
12. Many high school graduates are _____ for the workplace.
13. She appeared totally _____ at the news.
14. She fell off the bike and was knocked _____ .
15. The rules are too _____ to allow for human error.
16. The _____ distribution of power in the long run will lead to absolute monarchy.
17. Their church believes that premarital sex is sinful and _____ .
18. There was a slight collision but my car was _____ .
19. Unfortunately, I have to admit that it was a very _____ meeting.
20. When it comes to money, Dan is completely _____ .

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. They asked me a string _____ questions about Gerald and Bob.
2. I have an allergy _____ animal hair.
3. The public have an insatiable appetite _____ scandal.
4. I found some old photos _____ the back of the drawer.
5. _____ the beginning of the book there is a table of contents.
6. We are exploring new approaches _____ existing frameworks of practice and thinking.
7. All the lights went out and we were left _____ the dark.
8. "I can't wait!" Tim said _____ an excited voice.
9. Robert was _____ the second year of college when a terrible thing happened.
10. That's the third year _____ a row we forgot her birthday.
11. Take your hands _____ your pockets!
12. I made a mistake _____ telling Jack about Ruth and Bob.
13. You can bring your luggage here and put it _____ the rack.
14. Jerry took Barbara _____ his arms and kissed her.
15. She tapped him _____ the shoulder.
16. They finished their meal _____ total silence.
17. He was happy to be _____ friends again.
18. Jim easily ran _____ the stairs, as he was in good shape.
19. The child's mother made an emotional appeal on TV _____ his return.
20. The car _____ front of me stopped suddenly and I had to brake.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. I disapprove _____ people who make promises and then don't keep them.
2. He was absorbed _____ his book.
3. He accused me _____ selling secret information to the enemy.
4. There are plenty of graduates anxious _____ work.
5. This simple solution cured me _____ biting my nails.

6. A child's development is dependent _____ many factors.
7. The proposal originally emanated _____ the UN.
8. I am deeply indebted _____ my family for all their help.
9. She insisted _____ stopping to grab a bite at the café.
10. I've limited myself _____ 1000 calories a day to try and lose weight.
11. The film reminds me _____ my childhood.
12. She greeted us _____ a smile.
13. He scolded them _____ arriving late.
14. The policeman warned me _____ dangers of driving too fast.
15. I am waiting _____ my friend.
16. A sentence can be divided _____ meaningful segments.
17. Running is good _____ you.
18. She smiled _____ him and he smiled back.
19. Firefighters searched the buildings _____ survivors.
20. Jan is interested _____ chess and fencing.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. She appears _____ (be) very happy in her job.
2. She has to avoid _____ (eat) fatty food.
3. We've saved enough money _____ (buy) a computer.
4. Factory workers are often expected _____ (work) at night.
5. I am happy _____ (hear) that you can come on Saturday.
6. I'm hoping _____ (buy) a car this summer.
7. I was just about _____ (leave) the office when the phone rang.
8. I wasn't particularly anxious _____ (die) of snakebite.
9. Would the last person _____ (leave) please turn off the lights?
10. I'm sure she didn't mean _____ (upset) you.
11. Mary felt obliged _____ (write) a letter to Mr. Felton.
12. He's not old enough _____ (travel) alone.
13. Mom reminded Kristy _____ (say) thank you after the party.

14. Nobody seemed _____ (know) where the car keys were.
15. Stop _____ (make) that noise!
16. There is no sense in _____ (go) to London by car.
17. He is too intolerable _____ (live) with.
18. He had no idea where _____ (look) for her.
19. He stopped at the gas station _____ (ask) the way.
20. When you said we were going to have fun, did you mean _____ (go) to the movies?

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of say or tell.

1. My parrot can _____ a few words in German.
2. Please _____ me what you think of my new dress.
3. My mother used to _____ me a story before I went to bed.
4. He had taken an oath so he had to _____ the truth in court.
5. With identical twins you can rarely _____ the difference between them.
6. When I was younger I used to _____ my sister all my secrets.
7. My Dad always _____ good night to me when I go to bed.
8. The little girl _____ her prayers and then went to sleep.
9. Sally couldn't _____ for sure when she would come.
10. Unfortunately, I can't _____ anything good about your son.

7. Turn the sentences into Reported speech.

1. "Where did you go last weekend?" Jean asked her.

2. "Did you see a terrible car accident last night?" she asked them.

3. "Who ate all the cookies two days ago?" Mom asked my friends.

4. "Do you want a lift to work tomorrow?" he asked her.

5. "Hey, Bob, I'm taking my driving test next week," she said.

6. "I've never been to Paris before," said John.

7. "Jack, are you moving out this week?" the landlord asked.

8. "Why didn't you call me yesterday?" Meg asked him.

9. "Will you be going to San Francisco next summer?" his boss asked.

10. Then Eddy said, "I've written five letters this morning."

8. Turn the sentences into Reported speech using the verbs from the box.

confess	promise	scold for	insist on	agree	accuse of
complain	explain	apologize for	disapprove		

1. "...That's how I crashed the car," he said to me.

2. "I won't forget again," Jim said to Maggie.

3. "You're right. Going out tomorrow is a great idea," her husband said.

4. "She's forever listening to loud music!" Jack said.

5. "I'm sorry I insulted you," Tim said.

6. "You stole my handbag yesterday!" the old lady said.

7. "I don't think it was a good idea to invite Mrs. White," said Bill.

8. "You must take all the medicine," said the doctor.

9. "You're a terrible child! How could you spoil the carpet again!" mother said.

10. "It was me who took the limo without telling anyone," said Kirk.

9. Underline the correct linking word / phrase.

1. A door-to-door salesman came just then / after I left.

2. After that / After he graduated, he moved to Florida.

3. Amy left the house after that / as soon as she got the phone call.

4. Ben sold his house in Memphis. By that time / Following this he took a train to Chicago.

5. He had lunch. Next / Up until then, he did the dishes.

6. When / Next E.U countries met last month, they agreed to cut down on pollution levels.

7. Suddenly someone grabbed James around the neck. Up until then / As soon as he had never been attacked.

8. While / The instant Jane got the message, she made for the police station.

9. Phoebe made a phone call as / shortly after she was having lunch.

10. She took a shower and went to sleep. The moment / Just then, someone knocked at the door.

11. Something needed to be done the moment / before it was too late.

12. They had finished packing by the time / while we returned from work.

13. While / Later he was typing his article, his computer crashed.

14. The rocket exploded following this / shortly after it took off at Jamison Spaceport.

10. Join the ideas using the correct words / phrases in brackets.

1. He prepared the meal very quickly. Everyone enjoyed it. (although / while)

2. He set his alarm clock for 6 am. He was still late for work. (then / despite the fact that)

3. She disliked the book. She read all of it. (moreover / however)

4. She did her best. She failed her exam. (yet / as)

5. We complained to the manager. He didn't change our room. (even though / just then)

6. The house is exactly what we're looking for. The price is good. (while / furthermore)

7. The city is very crowded. People are not friendly. (in addition / but)

8. They all arrived. She began the seminar. (the moment / nevertheless)

9. We got the news. Everybody had dropped off to sleep. (also / by the time)

10. The thieves were making off in the car. They crashed into the tree. (still / while)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

Part 1

1. What happened to the airplane in which Francis Weed was traveling?

2. How did the passengers, including Francis, behave in this situation?

3. How did Francis get home?

4. Who did Francis try to tell about his crash story?

5. What are his children's names?

6. Who started the fight?

7. What was his oldest daughter doing when he came into her room?

How did he feel about it?

8. How often did the Weeds go out?

9. Where did Anne live?

Part 2

1. Who did he meet on the platform?

2. When did he see Anne the second time?

3. When did the Weeds leave the party?

4. How did Francis look and feel after he got home?

5. Why did Clayton come?

6. What were his future plans?

7. Who was Clayton engaged to?

8. Where did he get money to pay for the engagement ring?

Part 3

1. What did Francis say about Clayton?

2. What made Julia furious? What did Julia accuse her husband of?

3. How did Francis react to her series of accusations?

4. Who asked Francis to say a good word for Clayton?

5. What is the name of Mr. Weed's secretary?

6. When did he arrange to meet with a psychiatrist?

7. What did the doctor prescribe?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

Part 1

1. Why was he so eager to tell everyone about what had happened to him?

Did he manage to do it?

2. Do you think the family members buried the hatchet during or after dinner?

3. What was Julia like? What did she enjoy most? Did Francis share her 'hobby'?

4. What did the girl look like?

5. Why was she sad?

Part 2

1. Why do you think Francis missed his train? Do you think it was typical of him?
2. Do you think he was happy to see Mrs. Wrightson? Why (not)?
3. How did Francis feel after insulting her?
4. What made him happy at the party and miserable afterwards?
5. What kind of person was Clayton?
6. What was Francis' reaction when he heard the name of Clayton's bride?

Part 3

1. Why did Francis hate Clayton?
2. Why was Julia so concerned when her husband insulted a woman?
3. How come that the conversation started with Francis' statement about Clayton ended with Julia packing her things?
4. How did Julia and Francis show that they cared about each other?
5. Why did Miss Rainy decide to leave Francis' company?
6. Why do you think Francis chose to see a psychiatrist?
7. How useful was the doctor's recommendation?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. **Make a chart and list each character qualities /habits. Then give examples of their behavior.**

Character	Qualities	Behavior / Event
Francis Weed	mean	
		was insistent with the doctor's secretary and in business, formed a character upon a series of resolves (about cleanliness, punctuality, honesty, and virtue)
	unfaithful	

		intolerant to Clayton, met everything head-on, deliberately impolite with Mrs. Wrightson, struck Julia full in the face
	ineloquent	
	not self-confident	
	not far-sighted	
Julia Weed		went out a great deal, was well-liked, loved parties
	versatile	
	down-to-earth, practical	
	sensitive	

Character	Qualities	Behavior / Event
Anne Murchison	easily hurt	
		struggled when Francis tried to kiss her, sent Christmas card to Clayton

Clayton Thomas		talked about his plans, the town, his fiancée
	outspoken	
		wanted to go to the divinity school, planned to get a job to help his mother, thought about future, made money, was engaged to be married

2. Use the linking words / phrases from the box to make logical stories.

When	By the time	Then	Suddenly
The moment	By that time	Next	All of a sudden
The instant	Before that	Later	Out of the blue
As soon as	Prior to that	Following this	From out of nowhere
While / As	Up until then	After that	Luckily
After		Afterwards	Fortunately

a. PLANE CRASH

fly from Minneapolis → run into heavy weather → begin to rock & flounder → nervous → the storm (be) violent → Francis (not read) → the lights (go out) → (not) panic → make an emergency landing → howl → come down safely → (not) explode / no one (be hurt)

b. VITAL DECISION

take a train to work → see a girl → come up to her → realize (not) Anne → Trace (call) → ask to help Clayton → Francis (refuse) → explain → the conversation (be)

over → Miss Rainey (quit) the job → feel wicked/in trouble → have to make a choice
→ find the phone number → make an appointment with a psychiatrist

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Give examples from the story, which show how Anne Murchison influenced the life of Francis Weed.
2. Discuss Francis' attitude toward Julia and Anne. Who do you think he loved more? Find the sentences in the story to support your opinion.
3. Do you think the doctor's prescription cured Francis indeed?
4. Suppose Francis chose one of other options to deal with his problem (go to the church, go to a Danish massage parlor, get drunk). Discuss what happened after that.
5. What will happen if Julia learns about the passion of her husband? Discuss their possible behavior within the frameworks of his and her characters.
6. Discuss what Julia Weed and Anne Murchison have in common and in what way they differ in terms of their appearance and character.
7. People living in the countryside see things in a different light compared to those living in cities. In what way and why? Use the information given in the story and your own ideas / experience.

E. WRITING

1. Write short paragraphs describing the plane crash and Francis' way home.
2. Write a paragraph describing how the Weeds' house turned into a battlefield.
3. Imagine that Julia actually left Francis. Write a short paragraph describing his and / or her life after that.
4. What if a similar situation occurred in a big city and not in the country? Write a short story Urban Husband (or City Husband).

UNIT IV

THE WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION

Agatha Christie

PART 1 A

Mr. Mayherne adjusted his pince-nez and cleared his throat with a dry-as-dust cough that was wholly typical of him. Then he looked again at the man opposite him, the man charged with wilful murder. As a solicitor, Mr. Mayherne's reputation stood very high.

Leonard Vole, who had been staring in a dazed fashion at the blank wall in front of him, said hopelessly, "You keep telling me so. But I can't seem to realise yet that I'm charged with murder – *murder*. Such a dastardly crime."

Mr. Mayherne was practical, not emotional. He coughed again, took off his pince-nez, polished them carefully, and replaced them on his nose. Then he said, "Yes, yes, yes. Now, my dear Mr. Vole, we're going to make a determined effort to get you off – and we shall succeed – we shall succeed. But I must have all the facts. I must know just how damaging the case against you is likely to be. Then we can fix upon the best line of defence." To Mr. Mayherne the case had seemed black enough, and the guilt of the prisoner assured. Now, for the first time, he felt a doubt.

"You think I'm guilty," said Leonard Vole, in a low voice. "But, I swear I'm not! It looks pretty black against me. But I didn't do it, Mr. Mayherne, I didn't do it!"

In such a position a man was bound to protest his innocence. Mr. Mayherne knew that. Yet, in spite of himself, he was impressed. It might be that Mr. Vole was innocent.

"You are right, Mr. Vole," he said gravely. "The case does look very black against you. Nevertheless, I accept your assurance. Now, I want you to tell me in your own words how you came to make the acquaintance of Miss Emily French."

"It was one day in Oxford Street. I saw an elderly lady crossing the road. She was carrying a lot of parcels. In the middle of the street she dropped them, tried to recover them, found a bus was almost on top of her and just managed to reach the

kerb safely, dazed and bewildered by people having shouted at her. I recovered her parcels, wiped the mud off them as best I could, and returned them to her."

"There was no question of your having saved her life?"

"Oh, dear me, no! All I did was to perform a common act of courtesy. She was extremely grateful, thanked me warmly, and said something about my manners not being those of most of the younger generation – I can't remember the exact words. Then I lifted my hat and went on. I never expected to see her again. But life is full of coincidences. That very evening I came across her at a party at a friend's house. She recognised me at once and asked that I should be introduced to her. I then found out that she was a Miss Emily French and that she lived at Cricklewood. I talked to her for some time. She was, I imagine, an old lady who took sudden fancies to people. She took one to me on the strength of a perfectly simple action which anyone might have performed. On leaving, she shook me warmly by the hand and asked me to come and see her. I replied, of course, that I should be very pleased to do so, and she then urged me to name a day. I did not want particularly to go, but it would have seemed churlish to refuse, so I fixed on the following Saturday. After she had gone, I learned something about her from my friends. That she was rich, eccentric, lived alone with one maid, and owned no less than eight cats."

"I see," said Mr. Mayherne. "The question of her being well off came up as early as that? Miss French lived poorly, almost humbly. Who was it exactly who told you that she was well off?"

"My friend, George Harvey, at whose house the party took place."

"Is he likely to remember having done so?"

"I really don't know. Of course it is some time ago now."

"Quite so, Mr. Vole. You see, the first aim of the prosecution will be to establish that you were in low water financially – that is true, is it not?"

Leonard Vole flushed. "Yes," he said. "I'd been having a run of bad luck just then."

"Quite so," said Mr. Mayherne again. "That being, as I say, in low water financially, you met this rich old lady and cultivated her acquaintance assiduously."

Now if we are in a position to say that you had no idea she was well off, and that you visited her out of pure kindness of heart..."

"Which is the case."

"I dare say. You made the acquaintance of Miss French, you called upon her. We want a clear reason for all this. Why did you, a young man of thirty-three, good-looking, popular with your friends, devote so much of your time to an elderly woman with whom you could hardly have anything in common?"

Leonard Vole flung out his hands in a nervous gesture. "I can't tell you – I really can't tell you. After the first visit, she pressed me to come again, spoke of being lonely and unhappy. She made it difficult for me to refuse. After the third or fourth visit I paid her I found myself getting genuinely fond of the old thing."

"I accept your explanation, Mr. Vole," he said at last. "Whether a jury would take that view of it is another matter. Please continue your narrative. When was it that Miss French first asked you to look into her business affairs?"

"After my third or fourth visit to her. She understood very little of money matters, and was worried about some investments."

Mr. Mayherne looked up sharply.

"Be careful, Mr. Vole. The maid, Janet Mackenzie, declares that her mistress was a good woman of business and transacted all her own affairs, and this is borne out by the testimony of her bankers."

"I can't help that," said Vole earnestly. "That's what she said to me."

PART 1 B

"Mr. Vole," said the solicitor, "I am going to ask you a very serious question, and one to which it is vital I should have a truthful answer. You were in low water financially. You had the handling of an old lady's affairs – an old lady who, according to her own statement, knew little or nothing of business. Did you convert to your own use the securities which you handled? Wait a minute before you answer. There are two courses open to us. We can point out that it was unlikely you would commit murder to obtain money which you might have obtained by infinitely easier means or

we must take the line that you had no motive for the murder, since she was already a profitable source of income to you.

"My dealings with Miss French's affairs were all fair and above board."

"Thank you," said Mr. Mayherne. "You relieve my mind very much."

"Surely," said Vole eagerly, "the strongest point in my favour is the lack of motive. Granted that I cultivated the acquaintanceship of a rich old lady in the hopes of getting money out of her surely her death frustrates all my hopes?"

"Are you not aware, Mr. Vole, that Miss French left a will under which you are the principal beneficiary?"

"What?" The prisoner sprang to his feet. His dismay was obvious and unforced. "My God! What are you saying? She left her money to me?"

Mr. Mayherne nodded slowly. Vole sank down again, his head in his hands.

"You pretend you know nothing of this will?"

"Pretend? There's no pretence about it. I knew nothing about it."

"What would you say if I told you that the maid, Janet Mackenzie, swears that you did know? That her mistress told her distinctly that she had consulted you in the matter, and told you of her intentions?"

"Say? That she's lying! No, I go too fast. Janet is an elderly woman. She was a faithful watchdog to her mistress, and she didn't like me. She was jealous and suspicious. I should say that Miss French confided her intentions to Janet, and that Janet either mistook something she said, or else was convinced in her own mind that I had persuaded the old lady into doing it. I dare say that she herself believes now that Miss French actually told her so."

"You don't think she dislikes you enough to lie deliberately about the matter?"

Leonard Vole looked shocked and startled. "No, indeed! Why should she?"

"I don't know," said Mr. Mayherne. "But she's very bitter against you."

The wretched young man groaned again. "I'm beginning to see," he muttered. "It's frightful. I made up to her, that's what they'll say, I got her to make a will leaving her money to me, and then I go there that night, and there's nobody in the house – they find her the next day – oh, my God, it's awful!"

"You are wrong about there being nobody in the house," said Mr. Mayherne. "Janet, as you remember, was to go out for the evening. She went, but about half past nine she returned to fetch the pattern of a blouse sleeve which she had promised to a friend. She let herself in by the back door, fetched it, and went out again. She heard voices in the sitting-room, though she could not distinguish what they said, but she will swear that one of them was Miss French's and one was a man's."

"At half past nine," said Leonard Vole. "At half past nine..." He sprang to his feet. "But then I'm saved – saved..."

"What do you mean, saved?" cried Mr. Mayherne, astonished.

"By half past nine I was at home again! My wife can prove that. I left Miss French about five minutes to nine. I arrived home about twenty past nine. My wife was there waiting for me. Oh, thank God! Bless Janet Mackenzie's sleeve pattern."

"Who, then, in your opinion, murdered Miss French?"

"Why, a burglar, of course, as was thought at first. The window was forced and several articles were missing."

"That will hardly do, Mr. Vole," said the solicitor. "The things that were missing were trifles of no value taken as a blind. Who, then, was the man Janet heard talking to Miss French? She would hardly be having a conversation with a burglar."

"No," said Vole. He looked puzzled and discouraged. "But, anyway," he added with reviving spirit, "it lets me out. I've got an alibi. You must see Romaine – my wife – at once. Romaine is devoted to me. She'd do anything in the world for me."

"I am going to call upon her immediately I leave here."

He spoke enthusiastically, but the solicitor's heart sank a little lower. The testimony of a devoted wife – would it gain credence?

"Was there anyone else who saw you return at nine-twenty? A maid?"

"We have no maid."

"Did you meet anyone in the street on the way back?"

"Nobody I knew. I rode part of the way in a bus. The conductor might remember."

Mr. Mayherne shook his head doubtfully.

"There is no one, then, who can confirm your wife's testimony?"

"No. But it isn't necessary, surely?"

"I dare say not. I dare say not," said Mr. Mayherne hastily. "Now there's just one thing more. Did Miss French know that you were a married man?"

"Oh, yes."

"Yet you never took your wife to see her. Why was that?"

For the first time, Leonard Vole's answer came halting and uncertain.

"Well – I don't know."

"Are you aware that Janet Mackenzie says her mistress believed you to be single, and contemplated marrying you in the future?"

Vole laughed. "Absurd! There was forty years' difference in age between us. There was never any question of marriage – that must be just Janet's imagination."

Was there just a shade of hesitation in the words? The lawyer fancied so. He rose and held out his hand.

"Good-bye, Mr. Vole." He looked into the haggard young face and spoke with an unusual impulse. "I believe in your innocence in spite of the multitude of facts arrayed against you. I hope to prove it and vindicate you completely." Now for Mrs. Vole, he said to himself.

PART 2

The Voles lived in a small shabby house near Paddington Green. It was to this house that Mr. Mayherne went. In answer to his ring a charwoman answered the door.

"Mrs. Vole? Has she returned yet?"

"Got back an hour ago. But I dunno¹ if you can see her."

"If you will take my card to her," said Mr. Mayherne quietly, "I am quite sure that she will do so."

The woman looked at him doubtfully, wiped her hand on her apron, and took the card. Then she closed the door in his face and left him on the step outside.

In a few minutes, however, she returned with a slightly altered manner.

"Come inside, please."

She ushered him into a tiny drawing-room. Mr. Mayherne, examining a drawing on the wall, started up suddenly to face a tall, pale woman who had entered so quietly that he had not heard her.

"Mr. Mayherne? You are my husband's solicitor, are you not? You have come from him? Will you please sit down?"

Until she spoke he had not realised that she was not English. Now, observing her more closely, he noticed the high cheekbones, the dense blue-black of the hair, and an occasional very slight movement of the hands that was distinctly foreign. A strange woman, very quiet. So quiet as to make one uneasy. From the very first Mr. Mayherne was conscious, that he was up against something that he did not understand.

"Now, my dear Mrs. Vole," he began, "you must not give way..."

He stopped. It was so very obvious that Romaine Vole had not the slightest intention of giving way. She was perfectly calm and composed.

"Will you please tell me about it?" she said. "I must know everything. Do not think to spare me. I want to know the worst." She hesitated, then repeated in a lower tone, with a curious emphasis which the lawyer did not understand, "I want to know the worst."

Mr. Mayherne went over his interview with Leonard Vole. She listened attentively, nodding her head now and then.

"I see," she said, when he had finished. "He wants me to say that he came in at twenty minutes past nine that night?"

"He did come in at that time?" said Mr. Mayherne sharply.

"That is not the point," she said coldly. "Will my saying so acquit him?"

Mr. Mayherne was taken aback. She had gone so quickly to the core of the matter.

"That is what I want to know," she said. "Will it be enough? Is there anyone else who can support my evidence?"

There was a suppressed eagerness in her manner that made him vaguely uneasy.

"So far there is no one else," he said reluctantly.

"I see," said Romaine Vole.

She sat for a minute or two perfectly still. A little smile played over her lips.

The lawyer's feeling of alarm grew stronger and stronger.

"Mrs. Vole..." he began. "I know what you must feel..."

"Do you?" she asked. "I wonder."

"In the circumstances..."

"In the circumstances – I intend to play a lone hand."

He looked at her in dismay.

"But Mrs. Vole – you are overwrought. Being so devoted to your husband..."

"I beg your pardon?"

The sharpness of her voice made him start. He repeated in a hesitating manner, "Being so devoted to your husband..."

Romaine Vole nodded slowly, the same strange smile on her lips.

"Did he tell you that I was devoted to him?" she asked softly. "Ah! yes, I can see he did. How stupid men are! Stupid – stupid – stupid..."

She rose suddenly to her feet. All the intense emotion that the lawyer had been conscious of in the atmosphere was now concentrated in her tone.

"I hate him, I tell you! I hate him. I hate him. I hate him! I would like to see him hanged by the neck till he is dead."

She advanced a step nearer and continued vehemently.

"Perhaps I shall see it. Supposing I tell you that he did not come in that night at twenty past nine, but at twenty past ten? You say that he tells you he knew nothing about the money coming to him. Supposing I tell you he knew all about it, and counted on it, and committed murder to get it? Supposing I tell you that he admitted to me that night when he came in what he had done? That there was blood on his coat? What then? Supposing that I stand up in court and say all these things?"

Her eyes seemed to challenge him. With an effort he concealed his growing dismay, and endeavoured to speak in a rational tone.

"You cannot be asked to give evidence against your husband..."

"He is not my husband!"

The words came out so quickly that he fancied he had misunderstood her.

"I beg your pardon? I..."

"He is not my husband."

The silence was so intense that you could have heard a pin drop.

"I was an actress in Vienna. My husband is alive but in a madhouse. So we could not marry. I am glad now." She nodded defiantly.

"I should like you to tell me one thing," said Mr. Mayherne. He managed to appear as cool and unemotional as ever. "Why are you so bitter against Leonard Vole?"

She shook her head, smiling a little.

"Yes, you would like to know. But I shall not tell you. I will keep my secret."

Mr. Mayherne gave his dry little cough and rose.

"There seems no point in prolonging this interview," he remarked. "You will hear from me again after I have communicated with my client."

She came closer to him, looking into his eyes with her own wonderful dark ones.

"Tell me," she said, "did you believe he was innocent when you came here today?"

"I did," said Mr. Mayherne.

"You poor little man." She laughed.

"And I believe so still," finished the lawyer. "Good evening, madam."

He went out of the room, taking with him the memory of her startled face. Extraordinary, the whole thing. A very dangerous woman. What was to be done? That wretched young man didn't have a leg to stand on. Of course, possibly he did commit the crime.

No, said Mr. Mayherne to himself. There's too much evidence against him. I don't believe this woman. She was trumping up the whole story. But she'll never bring it into court. He wished he felt more conviction on the point.

The police court proceedings were brief and dramatic. The principal witnesses for the prosecution were Janet Mackenzie, maid to the dead woman, and Romaine Heilger, Austrian subject, the mistress of the prisoner.

Mr. Mayherne sat in court and listened to the damning story that the latter told. It was on the lines she had indicated to him in their interview. The prisoner reserved his defence and was committed for trial. Mr. Mayherne was at his wits' end. The case

against Leonard Vole was black beyond words. Even the famous K.C.² who was engaged for the defence held out little hope.

"If we can shake that Austrian woman's testimony, we might do something," he said dubiously. "But it's a bad business."

Mr. Mayherne had concentrated his energies on one single point. Assuming Leonard Vole to be speaking the truth, and to have left the murdered woman's house at nine o'clock, who was the man Janet heard talking to Miss French at half past nine? The only ray of light was in the shape of a scapegoat nephew who had in bygone days cajoled and threatened his aunt out of various sums of money. Janet Mackenzie, the solicitor learned, had always been attached to this young man, and had never ceased urging his claims upon her mistress. It certainly seemed possible that it was this nephew who had been with Miss French after Leonard Vole left, especially as he was not to be found in any of his old haunts.

In all other directions, the lawyer's researches had been negative in their result. No one had seen Leonard Vole entering his own house, or leaving that of Miss French. No one had seen any other man enter or leave the house in Cricklewood. All inquiries drew blank.

PART 3

It was the eve of the trial when Mr. Mayherne received the letter which was to lead his thoughts in an entirely new direction. It came by the six o'clock post. An illiterate scrawl, written on common paper and enclosed in a dirty envelope with the stamp stuck on crooked. Mr. Mayherne read it through once or twice before he grasped its meaning.

Dear Mister:

Youre the lawyer chap wot³ acts for the young feller. If you want that painted foreign hussy showd⁴ up for wot she is an her pack of lies you come to 16 Shaw's Rents Stepney tonight It ull cawst⁵ you 2 hundred quid Arsk⁶ for Missis Mogson.

The solicitor read this strange epistle. It might, of course, be a hoax, but when he thought it over, he became increasingly convinced that it was genuine, and also convinced that it was the one hope for the prisoner. The evidence of Romaine Heilger damned him completely, and the line the defense meant to pursue, the line that the evidence of a woman who had admittedly lived an immoral life was not to be trusted, was at best a weak one. Mr. Mayherne's mind was made up. It was his duty to save his client at all costs.

He had some difficulty in finding the place, a ramshackle building in an evil-smelling slum, but at last he did so, and on inquiry for Mrs. Mogson was sent up to a room on the third floor. On this door he knocked, and getting no answer, knocked again. At this second knock, he heard a shuffling sound inside, and presently the door was opened cautiously half an inch and a bent figure peered out. Suddenly the woman, for it was a woman, gave a chuckle and opened the door wider.

"So it's you, dearie," she said, in a wheezy voice. "Nobody with you, is there? No playing tricks? That's right. You can come in – you can come in."

With some reluctance the lawyer stepped across the threshold into the small, dirty room, with its flickering gas jet. There was an untidy unmade bed in a corner, a plain deal table, and two rickety chairs. For the first time Mr. Mayherne had a full view of the tenant of this unsavory apartment. She was a woman of middle age, bent in figure, with a mass of untidy grey hair and a scarf wound tightly round her face. She saw him looking at this and laughed again, the same curious, toneless chuckle.

"Wondering why I hide my beauty, dear? He, he, he. Afraid it may tempt you, eh? But you shall see – you shall see."

She drew aside the scarf, and the lawyer recoiled involuntarily before the almost formless blur of scarlet. She replaced the scarf again.

"So you're not wanting to kiss me, dearie? He, he, I don't wonder. And yet I was a pretty girl once – not so long ago as you'd think, either. Vitriol, dearie, vitriol – that's what did that. Ah! but I'll be even with 'em..."

She burst into a hideous torrent of profanity which Mr. Mayherne tried vainly to quell. She fell silent at last, her hands clenching and unclenching themselves nervously.

"Enough of that," said the lawyer sternly. "I've come here because I have reason to believe you can give me information which will clear my client, Mr. Vole. Is that the case?"

Her eyes leered at him cunningly.

"What about the money, dearie?" she wheezed. "Two hundred quid, you remember."

"It is your duty to give evidence, and you can be called upon to do so."

"That won't do, dearie. I'm an old woman, and I know nothing. But you give me two hundred quid, and perhaps I can give you a hint or two. See?"

"What kind of hint?"

"What should you say to a letter? A letter from her. Never mind how I got hold of it. That's my business. It'll do the trick. But I want my two hundred quid."

Mr. Mayherne looked at her coldly, and made up his mind. "I'll give you ten pounds, nothing more. And only that if this letter is what you say it is."

"Ten pounds?" She screamed and raved at him.

"Twenty," said Mr. Mayherne, "and that's my last word."

He rose as if to go. Then, watching her closely, he drew out a pocketbook, and counted out twenty one-pound notes.

"You see," he said. "That is all I have with me. You can take it or leave it."

But already he knew that the sight of the money was too much for her. She cursed and raved impotently, but at last she gave in. Going over to the bed, she drew something out from beneath the tattered mattress.

"Here you are, damn you!" she snarled. "It's the top one you want."

It was a bundle of letters that she threw to him, and Mr. Mayherne untied them and scanned them in his usual cool, methodical manner. The woman, watching him eagerly, could gain no clue from his impassive face.

He read each letter through, then returned again to the top one and read it a second time. Then he tied the whole bundle up again carefully. They were love letters written by Romaine Heilger, and the man they were written to was not Leonard Vole. The top letter was dated the day of the latter's arrest.

"I spoke true, dearie, didn't I?" whined the woman. "It'll do for her⁷, that letter?"

Mr. Mayherne put the letters in his pocket, then he asked a question. "How did you get hold of this correspondence?"

"That's telling," she said with a leer. "But I know something more. I heard in court what that hussy said. Find out where she was at twenty past ten, the time she says she was at home. Ask at the Lion Road Cinema. They'll remember – a fine upstanding girl like that!"

"Who is the man?" asked Mr. Mayherne. "There's only a Christian name here."

The other's voice grew thick and hoarse, her hands clenched and unclenched. Finally she lifted one to her face.

"He's the man that did this to me. Many years ago now. She took him away from me – a chit of a girl she was then. And when I went after him, he threw the cursed stuff at me! And she laughed – damn her! I've had it in for her⁸ for years. Followed her, I have, spied upon her. And now I've got her! She'll suffer for this, won't she, Mr. Lawyer? She'll suffer?"

"She will probably be sentenced to a term of imprisonment for perjury," said Mr. Mayherne quietly.

"Shut away – that's what I want. You're going, are you? Where's my money? Where's that good money?"

Without a word, Mr. Mayherne put down the notes on the table. Then he left the squalid room. Looking back, he saw the old woman crooning over the money.

He wasted no time. He found the cinema in Lion Road easily enough, and, shown a photograph of Romaine Heilger, the commissionaire recognised her at once. She had arrived at the cinema with a man some time after ten o'clock on the evening in question. He had not noticed her escort particularly, but he remembered the lady who had spoken to him about the picture that was showing. They stayed until the end, about an hour later.

Mr. Mayherne was satisfied. Romaine Heilger's evidence was a tissue of lies from beginning to end. She had evolved it out of her passionate hatred. The lawyer wondered whether he would ever know what lay behind that hatred. What had

Leonard Vole done to her? He had seemed dumbfounded when the solicitor had reported her attitude to him. He had declared earnestly that such a thing was incredible – yet it had seemed to Mr. Mayherne that after the first astonishment his protests had lacked sincerity. He did know. Mr. Mayherne was convinced of it. He knew, but he had no intention of revealing the fact.

The solicitor glanced at his watch. It was late, but time was everything. He hailed a taxi. "Sir Charles must know of this at once," he murmured to himself as he got in.

PART 4

The trial of Leonard Vole for the murder of Emily French aroused widespread interest. In the first place the prisoner was young and good-looking, then he was accused of a particularly dastardly crime, and there was the further interest of Romaine Heilger, the principal witness for the prosecution. There had been pictures of her in many papers, and several fictitious stories as to her origin and history.

The proceedings opened quietly enough. Various technical evidence came first. Then Janet Mackenzie was called. She told substantially the same story as before. In cross-examination counsel for the defence succeeded in getting her to contradict herself once or twice over her account of Vole's association with Miss French; he emphasised the fact that though she had heard a man's voice in the sitting-room that night, there was nothing to show that it was Vole who was there, and he managed to drive home a feeling that jealousy and dislike of the prisoner were at the bottom of a good deal of her evidence.

Then the next witness was called.

"Your name is Romaine Heilger?"

"Yes."

"You are an Austrian subject?"

"Yes."

"For the last three years you have lived with Mr. Vole and passed yourself off as his wife?"

Just for a moment Romaine Heilger's eyes met those of the man in the dock. Her expression held something curious and unfathomable.

"Yes."

Word by word the damning facts came out. On the night in question the prisoner had taken out a crowbar with him. He had returned at twenty minutes past ten, and had confessed to having killed the old lady. His cuffs had been stained with blood, and he had burned them in the kitchen stove. He had terrorised her into silence by means of threats.

As the story proceeded, the feeling of the court which had, to begin with, been slightly favorable to the prisoner, now set dead against him. He himself sat with downcast head and moody air, as though he knew he was doomed.

Yet it might have been noted that her own counsel sought to restrain Romaine's animosity. He would have preferred her to be more unbiased.

Formidable and ponderous, counsel for the defence arose. He put it to her that her story was a malicious fabrication from start to finish, that she had not even been in her own house at the time in question, that she was in love with another man and was deliberately seeking to send Vole to death for a crime he did not commit. Romaine denied these allegations with superb insolence.

Then came the surprising denouement, the production of the letter. It was read aloud in court in the midst of a breathless stillness.

Max, beloved, the Fates⁹ have delivered him into our hands! He has been arrested for murder – but, yes, the murder of an old lady! Leonard, who would not hurt a fly! At last I shall have my revenge. The poor chicken! I shall say that he came in that night with blood upon him – that he confessed to me. I shall hang him, Max – and when he hangs he will know and realise that it was Romaine who sent him to his death. And then – happiness, beloved! Happiness at last!

There were experts present ready to swear that the handwriting was that of Romaine Heilger, but they were not needed. Confronted with the letter, Romaine

broke down utterly and confessed everything. Leonard Vole had returned to the house at the time he said, twenty past nine. She had invented the whole story to ruin him.

With the collapse of Romaine Heilger, the case for the Crown collapsed also. Sir Charles called his few witnesses, the prisoner himself went into the box and told his story in a manly straightforward manner, unshaken by cross-examination.

The prosecution endeavoured to rally, but without great success. The judge's summing up was not wholly favourable to the prisoner, but a reaction had set in and the jury needed little time to consider their verdict.

"We find the prisoner not guilty."

Leonard Vole was free! Little Mr. Mayherne hurried from his seat. He must congratulate his client.

He found himself polishing his pince-nez vigorously, and checked himself. His wife had told him only the night before that he was getting a habit of it. Curious things, habits. People themselves never knew they had them.

An interesting case – a very interesting case. That woman, now, Romaine Heilger. The case was dominated for him still by the exotic figure of Romaine Heilger. She had seemed a pale, quiet woman in the house at Paddington, but in court she had flamed out against the sober background, flaunting herself like a tropical flower. If he closed his eyes he could see her now, tall and vehement, her exquisite body bent forward a little, her right hand clenching and unclenching itself unconsciously all the time.

Curious things, habits. That gesture of hers with the hand was her habit, he supposed. Yet he had seen someone else do it quite lately. Who was it now? Quite lately... He drew in his breath with a gasp as it came back to him. The woman in Shaw's Rents... He stood still, his head whirling. It was impossible – yet, Romaine was an actress.

The K.C. came up behind him and clapped him on the shoulder.

"Congratulated our man yet? He's had a narrow shave, you know. Come along and see him."

But the little lawyer shook off the other's hand. He wanted one thing only – to see Romaine Heilger face to face. He did not see her until some time later, and the place of their meeting is not relevant.

"So you guessed," she said, when he had told her all that was in his mind. "The face? That was easy enough, and the light of that gas jet was too bad for you to see the make-up."

"But why – why..."

"Why did I play a lone hand?" She smiled a little, remembering the last time she had used the words.

"Such an elaborate comedy!"

"My friend – I had to save him. The evidence of a woman devoted to him would not have been enough – you hinted as much yourself. But I know something of the psychology of crowds. Let my evidence be wrung from me, as an admission, damning me in the eyes of the law, and a reaction in favour of the prisoner would immediately set in."

"And the bundle of letters?"

"One alone, the vital one, might have seemed like a put-up job."

"Then the man called Max?"

"Never existed, my friend."

"I still think," said little Mr. Mayherne, in an aggrieved manner, "that we could have got him off by the – er – normal procedure."

"I dared not risk it. You see you thought he was innocent..."

"And you knew it? I see," said little Mr. Mayherne.

"My dear Mr. Mayherne," she said, "you do not see at all. I knew – he was guilty!"

Footnotes

¹ **dunno** (*colloq.*) – do not know

² **K.C.** (King's Counsel) – королевский адвокат (по назначению правительства)

³ **wot** (*misspelt* what) – incorrect for "who"

⁴ **showd** (*misspelt* showed) – incorrect for "shown"

⁵ **ull cawst** (*misspelt*) – will cost

⁶ **Arsk** (*misspelt*) – Ask

⁷ **It'll do for her** (*sl.*) – It'll ruin her altogether

⁸ **I've had it in for her** – I have had a grudge against her, an account to settle with her

⁹ **the Fates** (*Roman myth.*) – the three goddesses supposed to determine the course of human life.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1 A

1. adjust – to make small changes to smth., esp. in order to improve it

Check and adjust the brakes regularly.

to gradually get used to a new situation

Adjusting to the tropical heat was more difficult than they had expected.

2. be typical of smb. – behaving or happening in the usual way

It was typical of him to be angry about it.

typical! – used to show that you are annoyed when smth. bad happens again

What? Amber didn't show up again? Typical.

3. stare – (out, at) to look at smth. or smb. for a long time without moving your eyes

Stop staring out of the window and do some work!

4. likely – smth. that is likely will probably happen or is probably true

Snow showers and thunderstorms are likely in the next 24 hours.

likely to do smth.

These remarks are likely to offend some war veterans.

a likely story – used to tell smb. you do not believe what they have just said

It was not a likely story when she was due on stage in half an hour.

5. seem black – if smth. seems black it's sad and without much hope for the future

Things were beginning to look pretty black for us.

6. assure – to tell smb. that smth. will definitely happen or is definitely true

Her doctor has assured us that she'll be fine.

to make smth. certain to happen or to be achieved

Excellent reviews have assured the film's success.

7. be / feel bound to do smth. – to feel that you ought to do smth.

Maggie felt bound to tell Jim about the job, even though she didn't want to work with him.

8. come to do smth. – to begin to feel a particular way after doing smth. a long time

We've come to cherish those memories.

when it comes to smth. (informal) – relating to a particular subject

I can use a computer, but when it comes to repairing them I don't know a thing.

9. grateful – feeling that you want to thank smb. for smth. kind that they have done

Mona was grateful to Lorenzo for his support.

10. exact – correct and including all the necessary details

It is difficult to determine the exact number of homeless people.

11. urge – to strongly suggest that smb. do smth.

Katy's family urged her to find another job.

12. humble – having a low social class or position

He started his career as a humble peanut farmer.

13. aim – smth. you hope to achieve by a plan, action, or activity [+ of]

The aim of the tax is to raise money for education.

14. dare say (old-fashioned) – used to say that you think that smth. may be true

I dare say things will improve.

15. press smb. to do smth. – to continue to persuade smb. to do smth.

Both leaders are being pressed to agree quickly on the new treaty.

The police pressed her to remember all the details.

16. genuine – smth. genuine really is what it seems to be

The reforms are motivated by a genuine concern for the disabled.

smb. who is genuine is honest and friendly, you feel you can trust them

She is the most genuine person I've ever met.

17. accept – to take smth. that smb. offers you, or to agree to do smth.

Rick accepted her offer of coffee.

to agree that what smb. says is right or true

The jury accepted that the DNA evidence was flawed.

18. declare – to say officially that a particular situation exists or that smth. is true

Doctors declared that Morris died of natural causes.

A majority of Republicans declared their support for the bill.

19. transact – to do business

Most deals are transacted over the phone.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. beg, implore, plead, conjure, impel _____
2. accurate, correct, definite, precise, specific _____
3. presumably, to all appearances, assumably _____
4. authentic, indubitable, bona fide, veritable, _____
sterling
5. insure, guarantee, confirm _____
6. announce, state, proclaim, notify _____
7. objective, purpose, goal, intent, target _____
8. adapt, reconcile, match, correlate _____
9. manage, conduct, handle _____
10. agree, admit, affirm _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. For years people thought the picture was a (an) _____ Van Gogh.
A. exact B. vital C. genuine D. wilful
2. Business these days is clearly _____ on a world-wide basis
A. bewildered B. transacted C. annoyed D. declared
3. The salesclerk had _____ me of MP3 player's quality.
A. assured B. contemplated C. reconciled D. urged
4. After a strike, the company has finally _____ the workers' pay demands.

- A. adjusted B. pleaded C. accepted D. verified
5. The _____ of the bombers was to destroy public property and get publicity.
A. beneficiary B. security C. affair D. aim
6. Mr. Graft _____ that the city use the money for new playgrounds.
A. transacted B. accepted C. returned D. urged
7. Experienced travelers are _____ to choose hotels with health facilities.
A. deliberately B. likely C. reluctantly D. dubiously
8. Carol held a press conference and _____ that she was innocent.
A. declared B. stared C. urged D. succeed
9. I don't know the _____ terms of agreement.
A. typical B. likely C. bitter D. exact
10. _____ the angle of your monitor so you can easily read it.
A. Assure B. Implore C. Adjust D. Stress

3. Complete each sentence with a word in the box.

exact adjust declare assure likely
genuine urge transact aim accept

1. The jury is very _____ to believe he was in the apartment at the time of the crime.
2. Even though my eyes are _____ to the dark, I can still make out very little.
3. The band's latest release has _____ their success in the rock world.
4. They built a (an) _____ replica of the Opera House in Naples.
5. Police are _____ drivers not to come into London this weekend.
6. The idea of a common defense force has been _____ by some governments.
7. This is the first _____ attempt to reach a peaceful settlement to the dispute.
8. Severe flooding prompted the governor to _____ a state of emergency.
9. The main _____ of the course is to improve your writing.
10. Now you can _____ business electronically.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. accept | A. reject | B. conduct | C. affirm | D. neglect |
| 2. declare | A. proclaim | B. refute | C. impel | D. centralize |
| 3. exact | A. indubitable | B. humdrum | C. precise | D. defining |
| 4. transact | A. handle | B. shuffle | C. sign | D. torment |
| 5. likely | A. vehemently | B. exactly | C. presumably | D. definitely |
| 6. assure | A. hesitate | B. confirm | C. imperil | D. stare |
| 7. adjust | A. distinguish | B. occur | C. fancy | D. reconcile |
| 8. aim | A. idiosyncrasy | B. failure | C. issue | D. objective |
| 9. genuine | A. haggard | B. sterling | C. false | D. versatile |
| 10. urge | A. fast | B. bound | C. implore | D. boast |

Part 1 B

1. obtain – to get smth. that you want, esp. through your own effort, or work [by]

Weisner is hoping to obtain funding for a follow-up study of the children by taking a loan.

2. infinitely – very much

Our new office building is infinitely better than the old one.

3. profitable – producing a profit or a useful result

Many small hospitals are struggling to stay profitable.

4. dealings – the business activities or relationships that smb. has been involved in

The secret dealings of his department were made public.

We've had dealings with (= had a business relationship with) IBM for the past few years.

5. frustrate – to cause a person to feel annoyed because he/she can't act as he/she wants

Peters was frustrated by the frequent traffic delays and vowed to do smth. about it.

to prevent smb's plans, efforts or attempts from succeeding

Thick fog frustrated their attempt to land on the tiny island.

6. dismay – the worry, disappointment you feel when smth. bad happens

Many women discover with dismay that their salaries will not pay for child care.

7. watchdog – a dog kept to watch and guard premises or property

Yesterday burglars tried to break into our house. Luckily the watchdog scared them away.

8. jealous – feeling unhappy because smb. you like is showing interest in another person

She's just using him to make her old boyfriend jealous of her.

9. suspicious – thinking that smb. might be guilty of a crime [+ of / about]

The tone of Danny's voice made Nancy suspicious.

Police became suspicious of them.

10. mistake – to understand smth. wrongly

To her embarrassment, she mistook the date of the elections.

mistake smb/smith for smb/smith – to think one person or thing is smb. or smth. else

Ron mistook Phil's silence for indifference.

11. startle – to make smb. suddenly surprised or slightly shocked

You startled me! I didn't hear you come in.

12. bitter – be angry because of bad things happened to you or being treated unfairly

Jensen sounded bitter about his team's fourth straight loss.

13. wretched – very unhappy or sick

a lonely and wretched old man

14. fetch (old-fashioned) – to go and get smth., and bring it back

Rushworth went to fetch the key to the gate.

15. distinguish – to be able to see, hear, or taste smth., even if this is difficult

I couldn't distinguish the words, but his tone was clear.

16. astonished – very surprised about smth., because it's unusual or unexpected [+ at / by]

Miss Cotton was astonished at some of the responses.

17. article – a thing, especially one of a group of things

She didn't take much with her, just a few articles of clothing.

18. trifle (old-fashioned) – smth. unimportant or not valuable

Buying a house is no trifle for middle class families.

19. value – the importance or usefulness of smth.

Fiber has no calories or nutritional value.

of great / little value: *His research has been of little practical value.*

the price

The value of the dollar fell against the mark and the yen yesterday.

20. puzzled – confused and unable to understand smth.

Her reaction left me puzzled.

21. discouraged – no longer having the confidence you need to continue doing smth.

The game is simple enough that beginners won't get discouraged.

22. gain credence – if smth. gains credence it's accepted as true

His ideas quickly gained credence among economists.

23. confirm – to say or to show that smth. is definitely true, esp. by providing proof

New evidence has confirmed the first witness's story.

24. fancy – to think or believe smth. without being certain

She fancied she heard a noise downstairs.

25. multitude – a very large number of people or things

I love a novel with a multitude of characters and lots of action.

26. array – to make smth. such as information, facts etc. ready and available for use, especially in an argument or disagreement (*be arrayed against smb. / smth.*)

With such powerful interests arrayed against it, the reform plan had little chance of succeeding.

In a Court

1. charge – to ask smb. a certain amount of money for smth. you are selling or the amount of money you have to pay for goods or services

The restaurant charged us \$40 for the wine.

be in charge (of smth.) – being responsible for a group of people or an activity

Ann Watterson is in charge of the business section of the paper.

charge with – to state officially that smb. is guilty of a crime (be charged with)

The man they picked up last night has been charged with involuntary manslaughter.

2. solicitor – a type of lawyer in Britain who gives advice, and defends people

You need to see a solicitor.

3. line of defense – a method of proving smb. is not guilty of a crime in a court

4. assure guilt – to prove, to feel certain about the fact of having broken a law

The juror was assured of the defendant's guilt.

5. protest innocence – to keep saying that you are innocent

I heard him protesting his innocence loudly as the policemen was taking him away.

6. prosecution – the people in a court who are trying to prove smb. is guilty

The prosecution does not have a case against my client.

7. testimony – a formal statement of a witness in a court that smth. is true

The grand jury today heard testimony given by numerous witnesses.

Nothing could contradict her testimony that the driver was drunk.

8. take the line – to stick to a way or method of doing smth.

The governor has taken a hard line on illegal immigration.

9. vindicate – to prove that smb. who was blamed for smth. is in fact not guilty

The charges are false, and we are sure we will be vindicated in court.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. hinder, destroy, disappoint, impede, prevent _____

2. congregation, quantity, majority, plenitude _____

3. perturbation, disappointment, hassle, distress _____

4. amazed, surprised, overwhelmed, stunned _____

5. worth, utility, importance, price, estimation _____

6. corroborate, ratify, validate, substantiate _____

7. determine, characterize, pinpoint, make out, _____

perceive

8. stun, frighten, shock, consternate, spook _____

9. obtain, acquire, procure, receive _____

10. advocate, warrant, confute, exonerate _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. The repairs doubled the _____ of the house.
A. plenitude B. alibi C. value D. dismay
2. A tiny baby soon learns to _____ its mother's face from other faces.
A. distinguish B. exonerate C. vindicate D. impress
3. Many of his ideas have _____ popular support.
A. startled B. rejected C. contemplated D. gained
4. The thought of leaving filled him with _____ as it was a betrayal.
A. dismay B. estimation C. multitude D. remittance
5. He was _____ beyond speech as he heard about a million dollars he won.
A. confirmed B. prevented C. indifferent D. startled
6. This article _____ what many experts have been saying for years.
A. obtains B. confirms C. values D. faints
7. You must _____ yourself and fight this libel.
A. sentence B. vindicate C. commit D. distinguish
8. He was _____ to find no support among his friends.
A. pinpointed B. diminished C. frustrated D. valued
9. Rainforests are the source of a _____ of raw materials.
A. hassle B. multitude C. lack D. galore
10. We were _____ they were able to survive, as it was almost impossible.
A. astonished B. adjusted C. floated D. outraged

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

dismay frustrate gain value astonished
confirm distinguish vindicate multitude startle

1. We were _____ to find the temple still in its original condition.
2. U.S. officials said they could not _____ the report.
3. For several weeks after that, my head filled with a _____ of wild theories and speculations.

4. Among the trees below, he could _____ a yellow pick-up truck.
5. The fact that he's working with amateurs really _____ him.
6. The noise _____ him, and he dropped his glass on the floor.
7. I found to my _____ that I had left my notes behind.
8. He hoped to _____ an advantage by beginning his campaign early.
9. They discussed the _____ of having cameras in the courtroom.
10. The decision to include him in the team was _____ when he scored three touchdowns.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. confirm | A. refute | B. substantiate | C. prevent | D. strike |
| 2. dismay | A. skill | B. prosper | C. affection | D. distress |
| 3. gain | A. acquire | B. loaf | C. persuade | D. collapse |
| 4. astonished | A. suspicious | B. overwhelmed | C. experienced | D. impassive |
| 5. vindicate | A. condemn | B. warrant | C. confuse | D. resume |
| 6. value | A. committee | B. compromise | C. estimation | D. cheapness |
| 7. multitude | A. plenitude | B. singleness | C. guilt | D. feature |
| 8. startle | A. consternate | B. rejoice | C. relate | D. treat |
| 9. frustrate | A. accept | B. assure | C. impede | D. penetrate |
| 10. distinguish | A. pinpoint | B. mention | C. merge | D. approach |

Part 2

- 1. spare (smb.)** – to avoid doing smth. that would upset smb.

He destroyed parts of Diane's diary to spare the feelings of their children.

- 2. core** – the most important or central part of smth.

This dish is the core of a traditional Portuguese Christmas dinner.

- 3. reluctant** – slow and unwilling

The bank was rather reluctant to lend me the money.

- 4. conscious** – noticing or realizing smth.; aware [+ of]

Frank was suddenly conscious of the fact that Laurie was frightened.

Stanley was conscious that Mrs. Morris was looking at him.

5. prolong – to deliberately make smth. such as a feeling or activity last longer

Doctors say these drugs can reduce pain and prolong lives.

6. latter (formal) – the second of two people or things just mentioned

Both the oatmeal cookie and the cake were good, but I preferred the latter (= the cake).

7. dubious – making you doubt whether smb. or smth. is correct, useful, or safe

The new strategy of stopping drug smugglers is untested and dubious.

I am dubious about the safety of my car's airbags.

8. scapegoat – smb. who is blamed for smth. that is not their fault, esp. because smb. else wants to avoid being blamed

They'll be looking for a scapegoat if things don't go their way.

9. cease (formal) – to stop doing smth. or stop happening

Hansen has ceased cooperating with the FBI investigation.

East Germany ceased to exist in 1990, becoming a part of the Federal Republic of Germany.

10. inquiry – a question you ask in order to get information

The Internet is useful for making inquiries about flights and hotel accommodations.

the act or process of asking questions in order to find out about smth.

On further inquiry, it became clear that Walters had not been involved.

In a Court

1. acquit smb. – to give a decision in a court that smb. is not guilty of a crime

All the defendants were acquitted.

Bennett was acquitted of murder.

2. support evidence – to prove that smb. is guilty or not guilty by giving information, statements, and objects in a court of law

The victim's next-door neighbor supported the defense's evidence.

3. give evidence – to present evidence in a court

He refused to give evidence at the trial.

4. proceedings – actions taken in a law court or in a legal case

John is taking legal proceedings against his ex-partner.

5. witness – smb. who appears in a court to say what they know about a crime

The defense is expected to call them as witnesses.

principal – main or most important (*problem, aim, component, concern, reason*)

The principal aim of the project is to provide an answer to this question.

principal witness – the key witness in the case

He said there was now further evidence to discredit a principal witness in the case as a liar.

witness for the prosecution / defense – smb. the prosecution or defense lawyers choose as a witness in order to help prove their case

Avila said he considered Williams an important witness for the prosecution and made every effort to get him to court.

6. reserve defense – to arrange smb.'s defense

Luckily he managed to reserve his defense just in time.

7. commit – to do smth. wrong or illegal

Brady committed a series of brutal murders.

to order smb. to be put in prison

At age 26, she was committed to a trail.

8. shake testimony – to prove that smb.'s testimony is not true

Last witness shook Dr. Martin's testimony, consequently all charges were dismissed.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. lengthen, extend, perpetuate, stretch _____
2. clear, vindicate, discharge, let off _____
3. substance, heart, bottom line, crux _____
4. stop, quit, wind up, terminate _____
5. affaires, dealings, procedures, transactions _____
6. main, chief, primary, predominant, paramount _____
7. doubtful, fly-by-night, indefinite, unlikely _____
8. proof, affirmation, testimony, substantiation _____
9. unwilling, averse, circumspect, wary, hesitating _____
10. query, investigation, scrutiny, research _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. In 1981 he _____ being a player, as he was fed up with it.
A. scattered B. ceased C. concealed D. prolonged
2. The FBI confronted Schmidt with the _____ of his part in the murder plot.
A. core B. density C. evidence D. consolation
3. If they refuse, lawyers will begin _____ in the High Court for damages.
A. moles B. proceedings C. aims D. affairs
4. She was _____ to discuss the case, since it was rather painful for her.
A. reluctant B. pathetic C. astonished D. principal
5. He was eventually _____ of the charges.
A. spared B. recoiled C. distinguished D. acquitted
6. Several people have phoned to make _____ about the position.
A. landing B. evidences C. dates D. inquiries
7. His _____ reason for making the journey was to visit his family.
A. bleak B. dubious C. principal D. capricious
8. He didn't want her to go away, so he asked smth just to _____ the conversation.

A. prolong B. accept C. cease D. cure

9. Many critics regard this argument as _____ or, at best, misleading.

A. conspicuous B. dubious C. incorrigible D. genuine

10. Financial instability lies at the _____ of the institute's problems.

A. drudgery B. core C. reluctance D. value

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

acquit prolong core dubious cease
proceedings reluctant inquiry principal evidence

1. It seems he's eager to _____ his trial for as long as possible.
2. The firm was accused of _____ accounting practices.
3. The police didn't have enough _____ to convict him
4. The government has _____ all contact with the rebels.
5. She has begun divorce _____ .
6. Rupert is expected to be a _____ witness at the judge-only trial.
7. Stores have cut prices to attract _____ shoppers.
8. Math, science, and English form the _____ of a high school education.
9. The judge directed the jury to _____ Phillips of the murder.
10. There have already been over 300 _____ from people interested.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- 1. reluctant** A. determined B. scrutiny C. erratic D. circumspect
- 2. core** A. bottom line B. fragrance C. trifle D. vindication
- 3. dubious** A. precise B. defiant C. dim D. doubtful
- 4. proceedings** A. estimations B. procedures C. proofs D. deadlocks
- 5. evidence** A. violence B. converge C. testimony D. fabrication
- 6. inquiry** A. clemency B. investigation C. premise D. concealment
- 7. prolong** A. extend B. wind up C. outline D. support
- 8. cease** A. commit B. clutter C. stretch D. quit
- 9. acquit** A. engage B. shatter C. discharge D. detain
- 10. principal** A. paramount B. unlikely C. bogus D. insignificant

Part 3

1. illiterate – smb. has not learned to read or write or smth. that is badly written

It was an illiterate letter, full of mistakes.

2. crooked – bent, twisted, or not in a straight line

The picture's crooked - move it a little to the left.

dishonest

He was a crooked cop, that's why he was fired.

3. hoax – an attempt to make people believe smth. that is not true

The UFO sightings were revealed to be a hoax.

4. damn smb. – to criticize smb. or smth. extremely severely

The department's review damned the whole system.

5. pursue – to continue doing an activity or trying to achieve smth. for a long time

After college, Jeffrey said he hopes to pursue a career in medicine.

6. immoral – morally wrong

Their church believes that dancing is sinful and immoral.

7. ramshackle – in bad condition and in need of repair

No one had lived in the ramshackle farmhouse for years.

8. slum – an area of a city that is in bad condition, where poor people live

She grew up in the slums of Detroit.

9. cautious – careful to avoid danger or risks

Doctors were cautious about releasing Sharon from the hospital too soon.

10. peer – to look very carefully, especially because smth. is difficult to see

She was peering through the window.

11. wheezy – a wheezy noise is made by smb. who has difficulty breathing

Out of the blue they heard the wheezy thump of the engines

12. threshold – the entrance to a room or building

Men were not allowed to cross the threshold.

the level at which smth. happens (*hearing/ pain threshold*)

Eighty percent was the threshold for approval of the plan.

on the threshold of smth. – at the beginning of a new and important event

The region seems to be on the threshold of war.

13. deal table – a small table, used especially for playing card games

They sat around a deal table in the dining room.

14. tenant – smb. who lives in a house and pays rent to the person who owns it

The desk was left by the previous tenant.

15. unsavory – bad or morally unacceptable

The train station was full of unsavory characters (= dirty, dishonest, or dangerous people).

16. involuntary – an involuntary movement, sound, reaction etc. is one that you make suddenly and without intending to because you cannot control yourself

an involuntary muscle contraction / gasp / shiver

17. replace – to remove smb. from their job or smth. from its place, and put a different person or thing there

The apartments will be torn down and replaced with a shopping plaza.

to put smth. back in its correct place

She carefully replaced the china plate on the shelf.

if you replace smth. that has been broken/stolen, you get a new one

I'll replace the vase I broke as soon as possible.

18. vain attempt/hope – an attempt etc. that fails to achieve the result you wanted

Jordan made funny faces in a vain attempt to cheer her up.

in vain – without success in spite of your efforts

Workers tried in vain to keep the building from collapsing.

19. quid (Br. informal) – a pound in money

They spent over a thousand quids on a new sofa.

20. rave – to talk in an angry, uncontrolled way

Rosen ranted and raved about the team's poor performance.

to talk in a crazy way that is impossible to get, because you are very sick

Newman was raving and banging his head on the wall of his cell.

21. bundle – a group of things that have been tied together to carry them easily

The women carried heavy bundles of clean clothes on their backs.

22. in question – the things in question are the ones that are being discussed

The photograph in question was taken long before I met you.

if smth. is in question, there are doubts about it

Are you saying that the validity of the test is in question?

23. evolve – to develop by gradually changing, or to make smth. do this [+ out of/into]

SuperMart was a small family store that evolved into a national supermarket chain.

24. dumbfounded – so surprised that you are confused and cannot speak

He was dumbfounded when Ryskamp didn't apologize.

25. incredible – too strange to be believed or very difficult to believe

The divorce rate in the U.S. is pretty incredible.

an incredible story of survival

26. sincerity – the quality of honestly believing smth. or really meaning what you say

He's like a politician who wants to convince you of his sincerity.

27. hail – to signal a taxi or bus so that it stops for you

The hotel doorman will hail a taxi for you.

In a Court

1. sentence – if a judge sentences smb. found guilty of a crime, they officially give them a punishment

She was sentenced to three years in prison.

serve a sentence – spend a period of time in prison

He is serving an eight year sentence for burglary.

pass / pronounce sentence – say what it will be

There was silence as the judge pronounced sentence.

2. term – the period of time that smb. must spend in prison

She's serving a 15-year term.

3. imprisonment – the state of being in prison, or the time smb. spends there

Corelli could face life imprisonment (= imprisonment for the rest of his life).

4. perjury – the crime of lying when you give evidence in a court of law

Hall was found guilty of perjury.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. lodger, renter, resident, leaseholder _____
2. aim for, strive for, go in for, purpose _____
3. batch, array, pile, stack, bunch _____
4. doorstep, edge, level, inception _____
5. useless, barren, in vicious circle, time-wasting _____
6. convict, imprison, adjudge, penalize _____
7. uneducated, ignorant, benighted _____
8. substitute, give back, reconstitute, reimburse _____
9. develop, disclose, expand, grow, mature _____
10. circumspect, prudent, thinking twice, alert _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. He put his hand on his pocket, and pulled out a large _____ of \$50 notes.
A. affair B. bundle C. dismay D. tenant
2. I remembered all my _____ attempts to change his mind.
A. illiterate B. astonished C. core D. vain
3. According to the 1981 census, half of the population over 17 was _____.
A. cautious B. awkward C. illiterate D. dubious
4. Darwin believed that we _____ from apes.
A. sentenced B. evolved C. existed D. pursued
5. Have you found any _____ for your house yet?
A. threshold B. tenant C. scapegoat D. proceeding
6. The US intends to _____ new programs in space science.
A. pursue B. lack C. startle D. amuse
7. Companies seem _____ about investing money in R&D.
A. vain B. sympathetic C. incredible D. cautious

8. He was _____ to five years in prison.
 A. replaced B. urged C. sentenced D. charged
9. Two of the tyres had to be _____ .
 A. dispelled B. pursued C. convinced D. replaced
10. I felt myself on the _____ of another breakthrough, another change.
 A. threshold B. evidence C. bundle D. affection

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

bundle pursue cautious sentence threshold
 tenant replace illiterate evolve vain

1. She keeps all his old letters, tied up in _____ .
2. Should people _____ their own happiness at the expense of others?
3. He stretched up his arms in a _____ effort to reach the top of the wall.
4. It's your _____ to the world of e-commerce.
5. The painter _____ his ideas about form and color out of the work of an earlier artist.
6. If 70% of the population is _____, how do people know who they are voting for?
7. If we're too _____, we might lose a good business opportunity.
8. _____ are not allowed to keep pets.
9. The firm has been dismissing experienced staff and _____ them with younger people on lower salaries.
10. Tyson was convicted of rape in 1992 and _____ to six years' imprisonment.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- 1. sentence** A. reimburse B. validate C. convict D. implore
- 2. pursue** A. strive for B. miss C. hinder D. relax
- 3. illiterate** A. paramount B. overwhelmed C. vicious D. ignorant
- 4. cautious** A. versatile B. circumspect C. genuine D. imprudent
- 5. threshold** A. multitude B. affair C. ceiling D. edge

6. tenant	A. renter	B. pile	C. query	D. landlord
7. evolve	A. attempt	B. quit	C. expand	D. overflow
8. vain	A. astonished	B. barren	C. benighted	D. helpful
9. replace	A. recoil	B. handle	C. substitute	D. imprison
10. bundle	A. bunch	B. bottom line	C. lodger	D. security

Part 4

1. widespread interest in – interest in smth. which is spread everywhere

The last round of bidding aroused widespread interest.

2. fictitious – not true, or not genuine

The author fills this real town with fictitious characters.

3. unfathomable – too strange or mysterious to be understood

Today our philosophy teacher talked about the unfathomable mysteries of human nature.

4. crowbar – a heavy iron bar used to lift smth. or force it open

You will also need a strong crowbar to help you lift and overturn large boulders.

5. to begin with (spoken) – used to introduce the first point you want to make

Well, to begin with, he shouldn't even have been driving my car.

used to say that smth. was already in a particular condition before smth. else happened

I didn't break it! It was like that to begin with.

6. favorable – showing that smb. likes or approves of smb. or smth.

Reaction to the plan has been generally favorable.

giving smb. or smth. an advantage or a benefit

Part-time workers should not receive less favorable treatment than full-timers.

a favorable price – cheap or reasonable price

7. doom – to make smb. or smth. certain to fail, die, be destroyed etc

Many species are doomed to extinction.

The plan was doomed from the start.

Doom's Day – the end of the world

You could wait till Doom's day. They'll never show up.

8. biased – preferring one person, thing, or idea to another in a way that is unfair

Of course I'm biased, but I thought my daughter's paintings were the best.

9. ponderous – slow or awkward because of being very big and heavy

an elephant's ponderous walk

The system, though ponderous, works.

10. malicious – unkind and showing a strong feeling of wanting to hurt smb.

Jane warned me that Martha was a spiteful and malicious girl.

11. fabrication – a piece of information smb. has invented to deceive people

Of course, it might all be complete fabrication.

12. insolence – rudeness and lack of any respect

Although she didn't actually say anything offensive, her face expressed insolence.

13. denouement – the exciting last part of a story or play

The plot takes us to Paris for the denouement of the story.

14. revenge – smth. you do in order to punish smb. who has harmed or offended you (*get / have / take revenge on smb.*)

He took revenge on his employers by setting fire to the factory.

15. collapse – to suddenly fail or stop existing

The luxury car market has collapsed.

I thought that without me the whole project would collapse.

16. rally – to become stronger again after a period of weakness, to recover

The Tokyo stock market rallied later in the day.

17. clench – to hold your hands, teeth etc together tightly, usually because you feel angry or determined (antonym – **unclench**)

Jody was pacing the sidelines, her fists clenched.

In a Court

1. cross-examination – the process of asking smb. questions about smth. that they have just said, to see if they are telling the truth, especially in a court of law

He broke down under cross-examination.

2. counsel for the defence – a type of lawyer who represents you in court

The judge asked counsel for the defence to explain.

3. contradict – if one statement, story etc contradicts another, the facts in it are different so that both statements cannot be true

The witness statements contradict each other and the facts remain unclear.

contradict yourself – to say smth. that is the opposite of what you said before

Within five minutes he had contradicted himself twice.

4. confess to (doing) smth. – to admit, especially to the police, that you have done smth. wrong or illegal

Edwards confessed to being a spy for the KGB.

Occasionally people confess to crimes they haven't committed just to get attention.

5. deny allegations – to say that a statement that smb. has done smth. wrong or illegal, but that has not been proved is not true

Mr. Singh has strongly denied the allegations of corruption.

6. arrest – if the police arrest smb., the person is taken to a police station because the police think they have done smth. illegal

He was arrested and charged with murder.

arrest smb. for smth.

Her father was arrested for fraud.

7. confronted – if you are confronted with information, it is given to you and you must say whether it is true

When confronted with the documents, Hunter admitted the charges against him.

8. case – a question or problem that will be dealt with by a law court [against]

The case against Marshall will be heard in the High Court.

She is keen at all costs to avoid a court case.

an event or set of events that need to be dealt with by the police to find the criminals

Police are investigating a case of armed robbery.

case for the Crown – a law court in Britain that deals with serious criminal cases

9. box (witness box *BrE*, witness stand *AmE*) – the place in a court of law where a witness stands to answer questions

As the Inspector stepped out of the witness box I felt confident enough to look him straight in the eye.

10. consider verdict – when jury considers verdict in a court of law, it thinks over and discuss the facts relating to the crime before making an official decision

*The jury has retired to consider its verdict. *

11. find smb. (not) guilty of smth. – to decide that smb. has done smth. that is a crime

He was found not guilty of the death of PC Jones.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. retaliation, an eye for an eye _____
2. confront, dispute, impugn, call in question _____
3. artificial, hyped up, counterfeit, fake, bogus _____
4. statement, accusation, claim, declaration _____
5. cumbersome, clumsy, bulky, huge _____
6. deceit, song and dance, forgery, invention _____
7. partial, prejudiced, inclined _____
8. admit, make a clean breast of, profess _____
9. approving, benign, reassuring, predisposed _____
10. hateful, malignant, poisonous, vengeful _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. The response from critics has been totally _____ – they enjoyed new movie.
A. malicious B. fictitious C. biased D. favorable
2. O'Brien's later statement _____ what he had told Somerville police.
A. confessed B. stained C. contradicted D. aroused
3. He deceived everyone and registered at the hotel under a _____ name.

- A. fictitious B. malicious C. favorable D. ponderous
4. Hamlet was seeking _____ for his father's murder.
A. contradiction B. revenge C. confession D. doom
5. He spoke in such a _____ manner, that students were about to fall asleep.
A. biased B. malicious C. ponderous D. vital
6. The defense said the victim's story was a total _____ designed to get revenge.
A. allegation B. perjury C. background D. fabrication
7. At first, they pleaded not guilty, but then he _____ to shooting the young man.
A. revenged B. confessed C. clenched D. spared
8. Most newspapers are _____ towards one political party or the other.
A. biased B. factitious C. allegation D. wicked
9. The president has denied the _____, which he said were fabricated.
A. fabrications B. dealings C. accounts D. allegations
10. Miss Simms took a _____ pleasure in other people's misfortunes.
A. ponderous B. malicious C. suspicious D. grateful

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

confess allegation fabrication favorable biased
malicious fictitious contradict revenge ponderous

1. This farmer took a _____ on neighbors for poisoning his cattle by burning their crops.
2. He'd denied the _____, but was found guilty yesterday.
3. He apologized for being _____ and offered to pay for the damage.
4. "I'll pay her back for this." "Don't be so _____. It doesn't help anyone."
5. They decided to delay the trip until conditions were more _____.
6. He later _____ that he had been involved in the attack.
7. The author fills this real town with _____ characters.
8. University acceptance policies seem to be _____ against minorities.
9. Everything that was written about me in that article was a _____.
10. To Greg she didn't seem to be making much sense – saying whatever came first into her head and _____ herself.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. favorable | A. partial | B. wheezy | C. formidable | D. benign |
| 2. confess | A. obtain | B. deceit | C. admit | D. hail |
| 3. fictitious | A. at the bottom | B. vengeful | C. conscious | D. bogus |
| 4. malicious | A. reassuring | B. malignant | C. reluctant | D. principal |
| 5. fabrication | A. forgery | B. claim | C. testimony | D. array |
| 6. contradict | A. profess | B. prolong | C. lack | D. dispute |
| 7. biased | A. clumsy | B. exact | C. prejudiced | D. charged |
| 8. allegation | A. accusation | B. pollute | C. tenant | D. quid |
| 9. ponderous | A. counterfeit | B. cumbersome | C. illiterate | D. elaborate |
| 10. revenge | A. inquiry | B. vengeance | C. torment | D. proof |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Part 1

1. **get off** – if criminals get off they get little or no official punishment for the crime

Financial fraudsters often get off because the case details are too complex for the juries.

He got off with just a small fine.

get smb. off – to help smb. avoid being punished for a crime or wrongdoing

I pay anything you ask if you manage to get her off.

2. **wipe off** – to rub a surface with a cloth in order to remove dirt, liquid etc.

Ask the waitress to wipe off the table.

3. **come across smb/smth** – to meet smb. or find or discover smth. by chance

I came across a picture of you when I was going through my stuff.

to make smb. have a particular opinion of you

Sandi comes across as a really happy person.

4. **come up** – to be mentioned or suggested

A lot of new questions came up at the meeting.

5. **call upon** – to visit smb. for a short time, esp. formally

I spent most of the day calling upon clients.

6. fling out – to move yourself or part of your body quickly, using a lot of force

The left hand was flung out, the right was closer to the body.

7. look into – to examine smth. to find out the truth about a problem, crime etc.

A special investigator will look into the murder / the cause of the accident.

8. look up – to raise head and look at smb. / smth.

Look up – it's going to rain! Shall we go home?

to try to find information in a book, on a computer etc.

If you don't know the word, look it up in the dictionary.

9. sink down – to fall down or sit down heavily [+ into / on / down]

Tom sank down on the sofa, completely tired.

10. make up to smb. – to try to make friends with smb. to get smth. for yourself

The new boy made up to the teacher by sharpening her pencils.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. get off | a. rub |
| 2. fling out | b. be mentioned |
| 3. come across | c. try to find |
| 4. look into | d. try to win favor |
| 5. sink down | e. move yourself quickly with force |
| 6. come up | f. visit |
| 7. make up to smb. | g. get no punishment for crime |
| 8. look up | h. fall / sit down |
| 9. wipe off | i. meet, find by chance |
| 10. call upon | j. examine |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. If you don't know the meaning of a word, try to find it in a good dictionary.
2. She was charged with fraud, but her lawyer helped her escape legal punishment.
3. Exhausted after the race, she sat down on the ground.

4. He found by chance some old love letters
5. She's always trying to win her boss's favor – it's quite embarrassing.
6. Just take the sponge in the sink and rub the table.
7. They have been examining the cause of the accident for many months.
8. Trying to catch the ball, Martin moved his hands quickly with force.
9. What points were mentioned at the meeting?
10. Mr. Brown visited an old friend while he was in the city.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Michael was so exhausted that he _____ on the couch.
2. Trying to get an advantage, he _____ to princess.
3. She _____ her tears and smiled happily.
4. After _____ her hands _____ she got stupefied.
5. I wrote a letter of complaint, and the airline promised to _____ the matter.
6. At best you can hope to _____ with a \$100 fine.
7. We could _____ my parents if we have time.
8. "How old was Juliet?" "Ask me another. Let's _____ in the book."
9. Have you ever _____ such a horrible person in all your life?
10. A number of interesting points _____ at today's meeting.

Parts 2 – 4

1. **be up against smth. / smb.** – to have to deal with a difficult situation

Hugh is up against some stiff competition in the 100-meter dash.

2. **be taken aback** – to be very surprised about smth.

I think he was a little taken aback by my response.

3. **trump smth. up** – to use false information to make smb. seem guilty of a crime

They had trumped the whole thing up to get rid of him.

4. **give in** – to agree to smth. you were unwilling to agree to before

Randy asked her out for months before she finally gave in.

They refuse to give in to despair.

5. draw out – to move out of a place; take out

Slowly the train drew out of the station.

6. spy on / upon – to watch smb. secretly

You mean all this time you've been spying on me?

7. lie behind – to be the real reason for a decision or action; account for

We'd like to know what lay behind her decision to change her will.

8. come out – if information comes out, people learn about it, after it has been kept secret

No doubt the truth will come out one day.

It's come out that several ministers received payments from the company.

9. break down – to be unable to stop yourself crying, especially in public

She broke down in tears when she heard the news.

10. flame out – literary to become suddenly bright with light or color, esp. red or orange

Erica's cheeks flamed out with anger.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. be up against | a. yield to |
| 2. spy on | b. account for |
| 3. come out | c. cry |
| 4. give in | d. deal with a difficult situation |
| 5. be taken aback | e. become known |
| 6. break down | f. move out |
| 7. flame out | g. fabricate information |
| 8. draw out | h. become red |
| 9. trump up | i. be surprised |
| 10. lie behind | j. watch smb. |

2. Replace the underlined words the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Murphy will have to deal with a difficult situation when he faces the reigning champion this afternoon.

2. I think that a deep insecurity about herself accounts for Tania's aggression.
3. The champion refused to yield and went on to win the set.
4. Peter cried when he saw the deer that he had shot.
5. Managers feel it is their duty to watch the workforce.
6. Intel was surprised by the intensity of public anger.
7. The truth finally became publicly known at his trial.
8. As soon as she heard this, she became red.
9. Zola believed that the case against Dreyfus was fabricated and utterly phony.
10. Henry took out his wallet.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. He borrowed too much money, and that _____ the fact that his business failed.
2. Last winter he _____ a lot of problems with his previous boss.
3. Kim's eyes filled with tears and she looked as though she was about to _____ .
4. I was _____ to find him in such a desperate condition.
5. Detectives have been _____ Mr. Heskey's movements for some time.
6. Carlos is so timid that he _____ every time he talks to her.
7. Jenny kept begging me for a new bicycle, and I finally _____ .
8. During the hearing it _____ that she had tried to commit suicide.
9. _____ your pencils and let's jot down some information.
10. Every time Tom is late getting home he _____ some new excuse.

C. IDIOMS

Part 1

1. **stand high / low** – to have a particular rank compared to similar things or people
I know your son stands high on the list of suitable candidates.
2. **make an effort** – to try hard to do smth., esp. smth. you don't want to do
Board members made no effort to hide their disgust.
3. **make the acquaintance of smb.** – to meet smb. for the first time

I was pleased to make the acquaintance of Megan – such a nice lady.

4. take a fancy to smb. – to decide that you like smb. or want to have smth.

Cora took a fancy to a neighbor boy, and eventually married him.

5. fix a time / place – to decide on a particular time etc. when smth. will happen

Have you fixed a date for the wedding yet?

6. be well-off – having enough money to have a good standard of living, be rich

Stella's family is well-off.

7. be in low water – to be in a difficult situation

Cabral was in low water over his job performance.

8. have a run of luck / failures / wins etc. – a series of failures, wins etc.

Gamblers always hope for a run of good luck.

9. made it difficult – cause problems for smb.

They've done everything in their power to make life difficult for me.

10. make a will – to write a document saying who you want to get your money after you die

Her father made a will and left her the entire estate.

11. it will do (spoken) – it will be fine, suitable, enough

Your paper is only 40 pages. I'm sorry, but it won't do.

PRACTICE

Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

stand high

be in low water

take a fancy

fix a time

a run of bad luck

be well-off

1. His book could _____ among the bestsellers.
2. I think Sam really _____ to you! I mean he really likes you.
3. They worked long hours and became very _____ .
4. The finance minister found himself _____ over his business interests.
5. Losing my job was the start of _____ that year.
6. Can you _____ the new time for the meeting?

Part 2

1. make smb. uneasy – to make smb. feel nervous, anxious, and unable to relax

Talking about the money made Jennifer a bit uneasy.

2. give way – to break because of too much weight or pressure

More than 50 homes were flooded when the dam gave way.

3. not to have a leg to stand on – to be in a situation where you can't prove what you say

If you don't sign a contract, you won't have a leg to stand on.

4. be at smb.'s wits' end – to be very upset, frustrated, or nervous

I'm at my wits' end trying to fix this computer.

5. draw blank – to be unsuccessful at doing smth.; to fail to remember smth.

I just drew a blank on the last test question.

Part 3

1. at all costs – whatever happens, or whatever effort is needed

Maragret wants to have justice at all costs.

2. make a bed – to tidy the bed covers after sleep

It's 1 pm and you still haven't made your bed!

3. do the trick – to do what is needed in order to achieve smth. or solve a problem

The second surgery on my knee seemed to do the trick.

4. take it or leave it – used to say that what you have offered will not change

I'll give you \$15 - take it or leave it.

5. gain / have (no) clue – to (not) have any idea about the answer to a question

He doesn't seem to have a clue about the business.

6. do for smb. – to cause the death or ruin of; cause to fail.

The poor fellow is done for and will die before morning.

Part 4

1. narrow shave / escape – a situation in which you only just avoid danger, trouble

A woman had a narrow escape yesterday when her car left the road.

2. play a lone hand (an expression from card games) – to go it alone

3. put-up job (informal) – an event that seems real but has actually been arranged

It's been suggested the kidnapping was a put-up job.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

put-up job	at smb.'s wits' end	draw a blank	be up against smth.
narrow escape	at all costs	have a clue	take it or leave it
give way			have a leg to stand on

1. I don't _____ where you left your watch.
2. The process could take weeks, but I _____ a deadline.
3. He was probably even now thanking his lucky stars for a _____ from death.
4. Although the police tried to pick up her tracks, they _____.
5. That's my final price, so _____.
6. It was two days before the baby was due, and Robert was _____.
7. The demonstration was a _____, organized by the officials to arrest cult leaders.
8. No matter what it takes – she is determined to win _____.
9. It's only my word against his, I know. So I don't _____.
10. He was ashamed to have _____ to such feelings of self-pity.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. Take care of him because another stroke will _____ for him.
2. As you _____ your bed, so you must lie upon it.
3. He knows it's a mistake but he can't _____ anything about it.
4. Have you _____ a will yet?
5. We _____ acquaintance with Mr. Jason and he proved to be a nice person.

6. I know you don't like Mary, but could you _____ an effort to be polite.
7. Try to be persuasive, it may _____ the trick.
8. Constantly thinking about her future trip _____ her a bit uneasy.
9. "How about this hat?" "Great. It will _____".
10. He _____ it difficult, almost impossible to refuse, so I had to accept his offer.

D. WORD STUDY

LAW – LEGISLATION – ACT – STATUTE – BILL – BYLAW

1. **law** – a rule that people in a particular country, city or local area must obey
South Africa has repealed its laws forbidding interracial marriage.
2. **legislation** – government laws controlling a particular activity or situation
Divorce is still disapproved of despite legislation making it legal.
3. **act** – a legal government document with a list of laws concerning a particular situation
Three people were picked up after the bombing under the Prevention of Terrorism Act.
4. **statute** – a law established by the government and formally written down
Unfortunately his lawyer could find no statute or point of law preventing his client's imprisonment.
5. **bill** – a suggested new law that has to be approved by members of the government before it can officially become law
Yesterday's debate on the defense bill lasted all night.
6. **bylaw** – a law made by local government that people in a particular area must obey
Fishing on this river is forbidden under a local bylaw.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. It's against the _____ for children to work before they are fifteen.
2. The Criminal Justice _____ became law amidst much controversy.

3. This law cannot be repealed, it is an important piece of human right's _____ .
4. Doctors want a new Tobacco _____ to impose a complete advertising ban.
5. Wales and England share a common legal system but some _____ make special provision for Wales.
6. This year the University club changed its _____ and admitted its first female members.
7. Several democrats have put together a new _____ to protect the supply of drinking water.
8. The long-awaited Sex Discrimination _____ has finally been passed by both houses of Congress.
9. The _____ on compulsory seat belts has been a success.

LOOK FOR – SEARCH FOR – SEEK

1. look for – to try to find someone or something that you do not already have but that you need or want.

We walked all around the town looking for a place to stay.

2. search for – to spend time trying to find something or someone that you need

Airline safety experts are searching for a way of protecting passengers in the event of a cabin fire.

3. seek – to look for something you need, for example advice, friendship, or a job, especially if you do this through an advertisement or public statement.

The aim of the hostel is to give help to those seeking friendship or simple shelter for the night.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. Economics graduate, aged 25, with business experience _____ interesting part-time work in the West London area.
2. I've _____ a birthday present for Kim, but I found nothing I liked.

3. We want to improve our products in new ways, so we are now actively _____ ideas from our customers.
4. Is this the kind of thing you're _____ ?
5. The police and the villagers are out in the woods, _____ the missing child.
6. At this time of year thousands of school leavers are _____ jobs.
7. I've come all the way from Orlando to _____ my father – I haven't seen him since I was two.

SUBJECT – TOPIC – ISSUE – MATTER – QUESTION

- 1. subject** – what you are talking about or writing about in a conversation, discussion, book, film, work of art etc

He has very strong opinions on most subjects.

His memories of his own childhood were the subject of his first film.

- 2. topic** – a subject that people like to talk about and give their opinions on, especially because it's interesting, important or in the news a lot

When planning a discussion, choose a topic which will interest and involve your students.

- 3. issue** – a subject or problem that is often discussed or argued about, especially a social or political matter that affects or interests a lot of people.

The health service is an important issue in the government's election campaign.

- 4. matter** – a subject that people disagree about or are concerned about, and that needs to be considered and discussed in order to deal with it or find an answer.

I'm sorry that you think drunkenness at work is funny, Mr. Smith. It's a very serious matter, you know.

- 5. question** – a specific subject, especially a difficult political problem, that has been discussed for a long time in order to decide what to do about it.

Negotiating teams are making progress on the question of reducing nuclear missiles in Europe.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. The first item on the agenda today is the _____ of public transportation.
2. Politicians have been discussing the Irish _____ for years now, but there is still no peace in Ireland.
3. Sheena Wilson is the author of two books on this _____ .
4. The wedding has been the only _____ of conversation for weeks.
5. The rise of fascism in the 20s and 30s is a _____ which has been endlessly debated by historians and politicians.
6. Abortion is still a highly controversial _____ .
7. The King's mental state was becoming a _____ of concern.
8. The school of medicine is holding a series of 12 weekly lectures. _____ to be covered include stress, exercise and nutrition.
9. The environment is a popular _____ these days.
10. I advised the President that he must choose a few key _____ on which to concentrate.
11. I hope the Minister will go away to think about the _____ and come back with some firm proposals.
12. Bill was obviously embarrassed talking about money and tried to change the _____ .

– P U T –

1. **put smth. aside** – save smth. to use later

When I was in college I managed to put some money aside.

2. **put smb. down** – to say things to make smb. seem stupid or foolish

He is always putting his wife down.

3. **put smth. down** – to write smth.

I can tell you exactly what she said – I put it all down in my notebook.

4. **put smth. off** – to postpone, delay doing smth.

She put off writing her paper until the last minute.

to discourage smb. from liking smth

Don't be put off by the restaurant's ugly exterior – they serve excellent food.

5. put smth. on – to place clothes on your body

Put on your coat!

to become fatter or heavier

I put on weight very easily.

6. put smb./smth. through – to connect by phone

Hold on while I put you through to Mr. Weber's voice mail.

7. put up with smb/smth – to suffer smb./smth. bad and not complain about it

I don't know how they put up with his awful behavior.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. She's put _____ several pounds since the last time I saw her.
2. The meeting has been put _____ till next week.
3. I'll put you _____ to the correct department, madam.
4. Put _____ your gloves. It's very cold outside.
5. Kelly is trying to put _____ some money every week for her summer holidays.
6. You'll just have to put _____ with the noise until the repairs are finished, I'm afraid.
7. We put _____ going on holiday because I was very busy at work.
8. I hate the way Dave puts me _____ the whole time.
9. This lousy weather is enough to put anyone _____ camping.
10. Put your ideas _____ on the paper and I'll look at them alter.
11. One moment please, I'm just trying to put you _____ .
12. I don't know how you put _____ with their constant quarrelling.

E. REVISION

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. It is difficult to _____ to someone's idiosyncrasies.
A. lack B. declare C. confirm D. adjust
2. A report about abuse at the school was found to be a (an) _____.
A. fabrication B. affair C. evidence D. threshold
3. I'm not sure if her sympathy was _____ – she is good at pretending.
A. astonished B. ponderous C. genuine D. fictitious
4. A heart transplant might _____ his life for a few years.
A. prolong B. acquit C. startle D. transact
5. Her account of the accident _____ that of the other driver. One of them is lying.
A. confirms B. contradicts C. distinguishes D. accepts
6. I don't think anyone can _____ spending so much money on weapons.
A. urge B. sentence C. vindicate D. declare
7. If we develop the physical strength, we can prevent a (an) _____ of problems.
A. lack B. dismay C. multitude D. allegation
8. As well as linking branches of a company, WANs (Wide Area Networks) offer the opportunity to _____ business electronically with other companies.
A. gain B. contradict C. replace D. transact
9. There is some _____ that the economy is improving.
A. fabrication B. evidence C. inquiry D. core
10. Many people _____ adequate pension arrangements.
A. assure B. stain C. urge D. lack
11. People are beginning to _____ the idea that higher taxes may be necessary.
A. accept B. frustrate C. prolong D. cease
12. Mr. Kohl has denied the _____ of an illegal Mitterrand connection.
A. allegations B. transactions C. aims D. thresholds
13. The president _____ me he would sign the bill, since it would benefit the country.

- A. adjusted B. assured C. valued D. frustrated
14. I was very _____ to agree to their conditions, but I didn't have much choice.
A. likely B. reluctant C. startled D. genuine
15. People _____ quality management on that basis are doomed to disappointment.
A. pursuing B. replacing C. assuring D. vaining
16. He committed a serious crime, so he was _____ to eight years in prison.
A. vindicated B. biased C. declared D. sentenced
17. I assume that all superstitions are really _____ – they never come true.
A. likely B. fictitious C. principal D. genuine
18. These six countries are the geographical _____ of Western Europe.
A. core B. bundle C. vain D. tenant
19. To her relief she was _____ of all the charges laid against her.
A. sentenced B. declared C. acquitted D. valued
20. The main _____ of video materials is to present examples of language in use.
A. inquiry B. affair C. aim D. allegation
21. He has a _____ reputation as his company turned out to be fly-by-night one.
A. ponderous B. dubious C. cautious D. principal
22. The system is so _____ that many citizens simply do not register to vote.
A. likely B. illiterate C. biased D. astonished
23. There have already been over 300 _____ from people interested.
A. fabrications B. vindications C. proceedings D. inquiries
24. Luckily the rain had almost _____ by the time we left.
A. lacked B. ceased C. prolonged D. urged
25. Please bring something with you that _____ your identity.
A. distinguishes B. confirms C. confesses D. replaces
26. In foreign _____, 1966 was the most hectic year of his presidency.
A. affairs B. dismays C. proceedings D. evidences
27. We'll have to _____ all the furniture that was damaged in the flood.
A. replace B. acquit C. adjust D. pursue
28. Those whose income is less than a \$36,000 _____ will not have to pay taxes.

A. value B. threshold C. bundle D. tenant

29. Even though he was just a (an) _____ son of a farmer, he got to the top.

A. fabricated B. astonished C. biased D. illiterate

30. The _____ of the city council were interrupted by the demonstrators.

A. proceedings B. affairs C. cores D. attempts

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

fictitious	evidence	accept	vindicate	genuine
lack	aim	fabrication	replace	adjust
sentence	core	assure	dubious	contradict
reluctant	pursue	transact	multitude	confirm
allegation	acquit	prolong	cease	biased
inquiry	affair	proceedings	illiterate	threshold

1. McKinney, 46, has denied the _____ and claimed he was innocent.

2. 'Did he really?' Her astonishment seemed _____ .

3. Fortunately, Mr. Gibson was able to _____ her from charge.

4. Jane _____ the energy to argue with him, that's why she agreed.

5. Business these days clearly is _____ on a world-wide basis.

6. Recent experiments seem to _____ earlier results.

7. It was a (an) _____ letter, full of mistakes.

8. The result of his technological approach was that workers had to _____ to the management and not the management to workers.

9. She has _____ your explanation as to why you didn't attend the meeting.

10. A good reporter will _____ a story until he or she knows all the facts.

11. The ongoing violence has _____ the suffering of our people.

12. The center does research with the _____ of improving the lives of poor Americans.

13. He seemed somewhat _____ to explain, but finally did so.

14. The story was a complete _____ – I didn't believe a single word.

15. Some countries will _____ you to seven or more years in prison for drug offences.
16. The popular traditions from which such stories presumably came were not always totally _____, and can not be simply ignored.
17. There is now clear _____ that these chemicals are damaging the environment.
18. The airline has _____ travelers there will be no further delays.
19. I had never seen such a (an) _____ of stars before.
20. She had the ability to cut through to the _____ of a problem.
21. This document is worthless and unreliable since it is _____ .
22. If we don't get more money, the community theatre will _____ to exist here.
23. Sixteen commissions were created to advise on domestic and foreign _____ .
24. I am _____ about his ability to do the job – he was never good at doing anything.
25. Their strange behavior was enough to _____ my suspicions.
26. The crime is way too serious. Consequently a few observers expect the jury to _____ Mr. Hoskins.
27. If the temperature falls below a particular _____ , a warning light comes on.
28. "Have they found anyone to _____ Wayne yet?" "Not yet. It's difficult to find such an experienced worker."
29. Being unable to put up with his idiosyncrasies, she has begun divorce _____.
30. Police _____ into a possible motive turned up nothing.

3. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. accept | A. dispute | B. admit | C. convict | D. terminate |
| 2. prolong | A. announce | B. purpose | C. vindicate | D. perpetuate |
| 3. proceedings | A. testimonies | B. procedures | C. affairs | D. shares |
| 4. genuine | A. fictitious | B. ignorant | C. veritable | D. wary |
| 5. contradict | A. predispose | B. impugn | C. substitute | D. confirm |
| 6. assure | A. disgrace | B. frustrate | C. estimate | D. guarantee |
| 7. multitude | A. bundle | B. claim | C. dealing | D. lack |

8. sentence	A. validate	B. notify	C. match	D. penalize
9. adjust	A. confute	B. correlate	C. handle	D. distress
10. replace	A. match	B. reimburse	C. procure	D. strive for
11. inquiry	A. edge	B. forgery	C. scrutiny	D. plenitude
12. aim	A. purpose	B. claim	C. feature	D. evidence
13. pursue	A. attempt	B. adapt	C. advocate	D. terminate
14. vindicate	A. tarnish	B. sentence	C. pinpoint	D. exonerate
15. reluctant	A. authentic	B. averse	C. paramount	D. alert
16. illiterate	A. counterfeit	B. circumspect	C. sterling	D. benighted
17. cease	A. terminate	B. prolong	C. plead	D. spook
18. lack	A. be deficient in	B. declare	C. presume	D. reimburse
19. fabrication	A. malignance	B. deceit	C. inception	D. bottom line
20. evidence	A. substantiation	B. scrutiny	C. procedure	D. allegation
21. biased	A. bogus	B. amazed	C. unwilling	D. partial
22. transact	A. doubt	B. overwhelm	C. manage	D. require
23. allegation	A. song & dance	B. declaration	C. vindication	D. matter
24. fictitious	A. trifling	B. poisonous	C. counterfeit	D. genuine
25. acquit	A. convict	B. sentence	C. stretch	D. vindicate
26. confirm	A. contradict	B. corroborate	C. determine	D. substitute
27. dubious	A. bona fide	B. vengeful	C. shady	D. paramount
28. threshold	A. multitude	B. ignorance	C. consternation	D. level
29. affair	A. imprisonment	B. undertaking	C. statement	D. invention
30. core	A. part	B. crux	C. estimation	D. plenitude

4. Choose the word opposite in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. assure	A. incline	B. deny	C. estimate	D. guarantee
2. ponderous	A. clumsy	B. light	C. artificial	D. wheezy
3. fictitious	A. trifling	B. poisonous	C. counterfeit	D. genuine
4. contradict	A. predispose	B. support	C. substitute	D. confirm
5. reluctant	A. agreeable	B. averse	C. paramount	D. alert

6. accept	A. dispute	B. reject	C. convict	D. terminate
7. fabrication	A. destruction	B. deceit	C. inception	D. bottom line
8. acquit	A. convict	B. discharge	C. hassle	D. scrutinize
9. biased	A. prejudiced	B. wary	C. impartial	D. overwhelmed
10. cease	A. quit	B. wind up	C. confront	D. start
11. prolong	A. shorten	B. purpose	C. vindicate	D. perpetuate
12. principal	A. poisonous	B. primary	C. secondary	D. graceful
13. dubious	A. indifferent	B. clear	C. prudent	D. fly-by-night
14. multitude	A. bundle	B. claim	C. dealing	D. lack
15. vindicate	A. condemn	B. wipe off	C. deny	D. contradict

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

- I was completely _____ by his aggressive and unreasonable attitude.
- But now the authority is also _____ the cost of modifying all of its windows.
- It eventually _____ that she was already married.
- Mathers admitted he had followed Ms. Evans and _____ her.
- An airport employee _____ the three kids alone in the terminal.
- He was arrested on charges of spying that were _____ by his enemies.
- Why don't you _____ my sister when you're in Brighton?
- I wonder what _____ Arthur's sudden interest in golf?
- Wooster's name has _____ for the position of head coach.
- The government has said all along that it will never _____ to terrorist threats.
- I can't believe his lawyers managed to _____ him _____ .
- If you _____ the title of the book, you should then find the author.
- The firm is _____ serious competition from the other company, and we'll have to double our efforts to succeed.

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. I had _____ last time when I caught seven big trout within one hour.
2. I have been _____ all week trying to decide what to wear to the party.
3. I don't need much money – \$10 _____ .
4. If the truck that hit his car had been coming faster, it would have killed him; it was certainly _____ that he only had a broken arm!
5. He _____ for Jane to pass the driving test destructing her all the time.
6. Mr. Jackson intended to save his son's eyesight _____ .
7. After Jerry's speech his opponent didn't _____ – he was defeated.
8. He _____ to contact his parents as he didn't want to talk to them again.
9. Her parents are _____ and don't need to worry about money.
10. I am trying to think of the name but I keep _____ – just clean forgot it.
11. The doctor gave me those pills. They _____ and next morning I was fine.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *im-*, *il-*, *un-*, *dis-*, *ir-*, *mis-*.

___pleased	___attentive	___possible	___literate
___likely	___charge	___profitable	___moral
___relevant	___suspicious	___rational	___like
___adjust	___hear	___credible	___cautious
___voluntary	___tidy	___expected	___believe

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. Sheryl was _____ during the classes, as a result she just scraped through the exam.
2. It was such an _____ movement that nobody managed to react quickly.
3. He _____ going to the rock-concerts since he hates loud music.
4. It's _____ that Jackie will attend, because she doesn't like such kind of meetings.
5. I _____. I thought you said "furniture".

6. "Why did you wind up your business?" "Unfortunately, it was _____."
7. Jim's _____ behavior drives me up a wall.
8. Meredith was not only _____ that the proposal had been rejected, she was furious.
9. Even though he looked rather _____, he was picked up by the police.
10. You gave your address to the total stranger? You are so _____ !
11. He is historically _____ – can't say even when the World War II began.
12. "You shouldn't have laughed at her!" "Sorry, couldn't help it. It was _____."
13. The prisoners were _____ from the detention camp.
14. The witness claims it's _____ that he committed that crime – the killer was shorter.
15. It's _____ whether he agrees or not – we'll do it anyway.
16. There is nothing weird about the hypnotic state, though some people _____ it.
17. This room is so dirty and _____ .
18. It was _____ that nobody paid attention to the new invention, which could make people's life much easier.
19. It's _____ to steal.
20. Look! You _____ this equipment, that's why it doesn't work.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. One of the exam requirements is to retell the joke _____ your own words.
2. I can't understand anything if you all talk _____ once.
3. _____ the first place global warming is caused by air pollution.
4. The game was played in spite _____ the bad weather.
5. _____ the first time after his coming back he went out.
6. _____ top of all our other problems, the car broke down.
7. Are you _____ favor of gun control?
8. There is a reason _____ doing things this way – it's cheaper.
9. You are not _____ a position to demand things.

10. Students who face difficulties _____ applying for financial aid should speak to a counselor.
11. They seem to be good friends, although they have few interests _____ common.
12. There's not much difference _____ price between the two brands.
13. There is no hope _____ finding anybody else alive.
14. The burglar took those books _____ a blind.
15. She was still a child _____ her mother's eyes.
16. I have no intention _____ staying indoors on a nice sunny day like this.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. Everybody stared _____ his hat.
2. The teacher shouted angrily _____ the boys.
3. There's nothing to worry _____. Everything is under control.
4. She is so devoted _____ her children that she can do anything for them.
5. As an artist you can't always count _____ a steady income.
6. Six men have been charged _____ attempted robbery.
7. A good education will help you succeed _____ making the world your oyster.
8. We were very pleased _____ hear your wonderful news.
9. We are extremely grateful _____ you for all the help you have given us.
10. She did not confide her love _____ anyone – not even to her best friend.
11. Niagara Falls is popular _____ tourists.
12. His work was full _____ mistakes.
13. She is very bitter _____ her ex-husband.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. Factory workers are often expected _____ (work) at night.
2. Marianne prefers not _____ (walk) home on her own at night.
3. Polly remembers _____ (see) her keys on the table yesterday.
4. Give me some time _____ (cook) dinner. It's for 6 people!

5. She somehow managed _____ (arrange) a meeting.
6. He ceased _____ (talk) to her, when he found out she had betrayed him.
7. Don't hesitate _____ (call) if you have any problems.
8. It's too cold _____ (go out) without a coat.
9. If you don't study hard now, you risk _____ (fail) your finals.
10. I certainly don't intend _____ (wait) here all day!
11. He threatened _____ (kill) her if she didn't tell him where the money was.
12. Before her illness she had never contemplated _____ (retire) .
13. Our aim is _____ (open) office in Memphis before the end of the year.
14. She keeps _____ (ask) me dumb questions.
15. Would you dare _____ (do) a parachute jump?
16. Shelly seems _____ (be) a very nice girl.
17. Does she speak Italian well enough _____ (get) the job?
18. I'm hoping _____ (buy) a car this summer.
19. You've done so much studying that you're bound _____ (get) an "A" on the test.
20. I urged him _____ (fight) the decision.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of *say* or *tell*.

1. She didn't accept that I was _____ the truth.
2. "How old are you?" "I'd rather not _____ ."
3. I have an amazing story to _____ you.
4. Can you _____ me the reason why you are so unhappy?
5. Everybody was so shocked, that nobody had anything to _____ .
6. I can't _____ all the details now – it's so complicated.
7. Someone _____ that when one teaches, two learn.
8. Liz's aunt once _____ Liz that most problems exist only in our imagination.
9. The teacher _____ we should hand in our papers by Friday.
10. She's not above _____ a few lies, if it makes life easier.
11. I would like to _____ how happy I am to be here today.
12. After that she _____ goodbye and left.

7. Turn the sentences into reported speech.

1. Sam said, "We have a gift for our neighbors."

2. She asked, "Where is your jacket? You are always losing things."

3. She said, "I've been calling you at home, but there is no answer. I'm worried."

4. Mike asked, "Do I need to change flight?"

5. "We must go home now", said the man to his children.

6. Frank asked, "What is your favorite film?"

7. Ted said, "Next Saturday I'm taking my children to see grandparents, so I can't work."

8. She asked, "Can you play the guitar? I'd love to hear it one day."

9. Britt said, "If I finish work early, I'll call you today."

10. "How many hours did you have to wait yesterday?" she asked them.

11. Sandy said, "Stop shouting or I'll punish you."

12. "Who was at the door?" David asked Jane.

13. She said, "I took 10 pills this week"

14. Kevin asked, "Can I have this biscuit, please, Mom?"

8. Turn the sentences into reported speech using the verbs from the box.

wonder	assure	promise	swear	explain	admit	agree	insist
confess	reply	want to know	declare	claim	deny	exclaim	
interrupt	want to find out	continue	state	remark	assume		
threaten	be interested	inform	demand	warn			

1. Piper said, "You are right. I've made a mistake."

2. Steve said, "I'll work overtime next week, only if I get paid double."

3. Cole asked, "Would you like to play tennis with me next Sunday?"

4. Harry said, "Last week I stole a car, then I robbed the bank."

5. Andrew said, "Don't you dare leave me otherwise I'll commit a suicide!"

6. Joey said, "I've been doing all the work."

7. Ross said, "The movie we saw yesterday was very interesting."

8. Chandler said to us, "We don't accept checks."

9. Miranda said, "I'm too tired. I think I'm going to take a vacation"

10. Page asked, "When will you do your homework?"

11. Drew told me, "You have my full support in this matter."

12. Samantha said, "Wait, wait, wait. Sorry. Let me tell you. Yesterday I called you three times but you didn't answer."

13. Kate asked, "Has he ever been to Paris? His French is perfect."

14. Aidan said, "So, as I was telling you next week we are going to the movies."

15. Claire said, "Don't worry. I'll help you to solve this problem tomorrow."

16. Carrie said, "I won't tell anyone, you have my word for it."

17. Monica said, "Maybe he has the necessary documents."

18. Phoebe asked, "Are you staying here till next Monday?"

19. Matt told Ben, "I showed you how this machine works."

20. Natalia said, "I want to know the complete truth. Tell me now."

21. Jay said, "You are right. We definitely should go by train tomorrow."

22. Bob told her, "As for your question I say I have never seen this case. Don't you trust me?"

23. Charlotte said, "Oh, my God! I just don't believe it!"

24. Wendy told Peter, "Please, be careful! It's dangerous."

25. Mr. Big said, "No, it's not true. I've never accepted bribes in my life!"

26. Rachel said, "I do not believe this information is accurate. I firmly hold this opinion."

9. Underline the correct linking word/phrase.

1. The lecture was boring. *Consequently* / *Because of* Tom fell asleep.
2. The buses were on strike. *The reason for* / *Therefore* Mr. Smith had to take a taxi.
3. Some were for his idea while others were not. *As a result* / *Because* he was at his wit's end.
4. *Consequently* / *Since* you are not listening to the radio, we can turn it off.
5. Mark has no money. *So that* / *That's why* he can't go to the cinema.
6. The director won't be at the meeting. *So* / *Since* he will expect you to report back to him.
7. He was afraid that he wouldn't be able to control children. *As a result* / *The reason for* it was that he had never had to manage large groups of them.
8. They didn't go for a walk *because of* / *as a consequence* rain.

10. Join the ideas, using the correct words/phrases in brackets.

1. He got that letter. She had been in Canada. (that's why / by the time)

2. She felt very tired. She went to bed early. (so / the instant)

3. Their plan was simple. It was successful. (before long / yet)

4. He called me. He heard the news. (while / as soon as)

5. The hotel was too expensive. It was very close to the freeway. (besides / as a result)

6. She didn't work hard enough. She failed the exam. (moreover / consequently)

7. She was tired. She stayed up to watch the late night movie on TV. (since / even though)

8. The value of this stock rose 17% last year. Analysts say it should continue to increase this year. (in addition to that / nevertheless)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

Part 1

1. What was Mr. Mayherne like?
2. What was Mr. Leonard Vole like?
3. How did he come to meet Ms. Emily French? Where did he meet her then?
4. What was Mr. Vole charged with?
5. What were two lines of defense Mr. Mayherne suggested concentrating on?
6. What did Ms. French leave for Mr. Vole? Why? How did he feel about it?
7. Who was in the house except for Mrs. French and murderer?
8. What alibi did Mr. Vole provide to Mr. Mayherne?

Part 2

1. What was Ms. Romaine Heilger like?
2. How did Ms. Heilger behave herself during her conversation with Mr. Mayherne?
3. What kind of story did Ms. Heilger come up with? Did Mr. Mayherne believe her?
4. Describe what happened during the first days of trial?
5. Did inquiries have any result?

Part 3

1. What did Mr. Mayherne get on the eve of the trial?
2. How did Mr. Mayherne feel about it?
3. Describe a woman who wrote the letter and her room.
4. What was the reason that woman wanted to take revenge on Ms. Heilger?
5. What evidence did Mr. Mayherne manage to acquire?
6. How much did Mr. Mayherne pay for the evidence to acquit his client?

Part 4

1. Describe the beginning of the trial.
2. How did Mr. Mayherne shake Ms. Heilger's testimony?

3. What was the result of the trial?
4. How did it occur to Mr. Mayherne that Ms. Heilger set him up?
5. What were the explanation and the reason for that put-up job?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

Part 1

1. Did Mr. Mayherne believe Mr. Vole was innocent?
2. What does Mr. Mayherne mean saying there were two lines of defense open for them?
3. Why was Ms. Janet Mackenzie bitter about Mr. Vole?
4. What was the reason for Ms. French to keep seeing Mr. Vole? Was Mr. Vole aware of it?
5. Why did Mr. Mayherne's heart sink when he heard that Ms. Heilger was the only one to support Mr. Vole's words?

Part 2

1. Why did Mr. Mayherne feel uncomfortable talking to Ms. Heilger?
2. Why did Ms. Heilger exclaim, "How stupid men are!"?
3. Why did Ms. Heilger make up the whole story?
4. Why did all the inquires to find the murderer draw blank?

Part 3

1. Why did Mr. Mayherne decided to use the letter in his line of defense even though it might have been a hoax?
2. Why didn't Mr. Mayherne guess that it was a put-up job?
3. Why did the woman pretend she wasn't willing to give those letters to Mr. Mayherne?
4. Was it easy for Ms. Heilger to play her part?

Part 4

1. What was the real reason Mr. Vole got together with Ms. French?
2. Was Mr. Vole aware of the fact that Ms. Heilger wanted to save him?
3. How did Ms. Heilger really feel about Mr. Vole? Why did she act the whole thing out?

4. Had Mr. Mayherne known his client was guilty, would have he defended him anyway?
5. What does author mean when he says “Curious things, habits”?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Make a chart and list each character qualities / habits. Then give examples of their behavior.

Character	Qualities	Behavior / Event
Mr. Mayherne		Practical, rational, unemotional, has his feet firmly on the ground, never has his head in the clouds
	hard-working assiduous	
	conservative	
	determined	
Mr. Leonard Vole		Firstly pretended that he was interested in Ms. French to get her money. Then acted as if he was innocent. Was unshaken by cross-examination in court.
	self-confident	
	fortune-hunter	
Ms. Romaine Heilger	ingenious elaborate	

	decisive	
	composed	
		Could sacrifice her life for the loved one. Trumped up a story in the court so that to acquit him, stood up for him.
	picks up things quickly	
Ms. Emily French	eccentric	
	has an eye for business	
		Went out to the parties. Mingled with people.
Ms. Janet Mackenzie	faithful	
		Suspected Mr. Vole of making up to Mrs. French in order to get her money

2. Complete the chain of events in accordance with the story. Use the linking words / phrases from the box to make logical stories.

When	By the time	Then	Suddenly
The moment	By that time	Next	All of a sudden
The instant	Before that	Later	Out of the blue
As soon as	Prior to that	Following this	From out of nowhere
While / As	Up until then	After that	Luckily
After		Afterwards	Fortunately

a. POLICE PROCEEDINGS

Ms. Emily French was found murdered at her house → → Mr. Leonard Vole was found not guilty of murder

b. MEETING WITH MS. ROMAINE HEILGER

Mr. Mayherne came to talk to Ms. Heilger → → Mr. Mayherne left Ms. Heilger’s house

c. MEETING WITH MRS. MOGSON

Mr. Mayherne received a letter → → Mr. Mayherne left ramshackle room

3. Think of some examples of cause-and-effect relationship in this story. Then complete the following chart.

Cause	Effect
1. Mr. Leonard Vole was down and out.	1.
2.	2. She came back and heard two voices.
3. Ms. French left all her money to Mr. Vole.	3.
4.	4. Mr. Mayherne became fully convinced that Mr. Vole was innocent.
5.	5. She deceived Mr. Mayherne.
6.	6. Mr. Mayherne understood that it was a put-up job.
7. Ms. Heilger perjured in court.	7.

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Discuss the relationships between Ms. Heilger and Mr. Vole / Ms. French and Mr. Vole. Find sentences in the story to support your opinion.
2. There are sayings “A liar begins with making falsehood appear like truth, and ends with making truth itself appear like falsehood” by William Shenstone (1714 – 1763, British Poet) and “Grow your tree of falsehood from a small grain of truth” by Czeslaw Milosz (1911 – 2004, Polish Poet and Essayist). How do they apply to the story you have read?
3. Someone said, “Love can conquer all“. Discuss the way it can be applicable to the story you have read.
4. There is an idiom “You can't judge a book by its cover.” Do you think it applies to the story you have read?
5. Give examples from the story which show Ms. Heilger’s determination.
6. Suppose Ms. French was not killed. Discuss possible options for Ms. Heilger and Mr. Vole.
7. Make predictions about life of Ms. Heilger and Mr. Vole after the court.

E. WRITING

1. Pretend to be Ms. Janet Mackenzie. Write a speech accusing Mr. Vole of murder.
2. Pretend to be Mr. Mayherne. Write a defense speech for Mr. Vole.
3. Create a conversation between Ms. Heilger and Mr. Vole after he came back from Ms. French’s house at the night of murder.
4. Compare Ms. Heilger and Ms. French. In what way are they alike? How are they different?
5. Imagine Mr. Vole was found guilty. Write a short paragraph describing his and Ms. Romaine Heilger life after that.

REFERENCES:

1. Американский рассказ XX века. Сборник на англ. языке.- сост. Самуэльян. – М.: «Менеджер», 2000. – 304 с.
2. Избранные рассказы англо-американских авторов. – М.: Айрис-пресс, 2002. – 352 с.
3. Маккей А., Ботнер М.Т., Дж. И. Гейтс. Словарь американских идиом. – СПб.: «Лань», 1997. – 458 с.
Н.А. Самуэльян. – М.: «Менеджер», 1996. – 304 с.
4. Чивер Джон. Избранная проза. Сборник на англ. языке.- сост. Н.А. Самуэльян. – М.: «Менеджер», 2000. – 304 с.
5. Advanced American Dictionary. – Longman, 2001. – 1542 p.
6. Collocations, Dictionary for Students of English. – Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press, 2001. – 887 p.
7. Concise Dictionary and Thesaurus. – Harper Collins Publishers, 2001. – 1139 p.
8. Dictionary of Contemporary English. – Pearson Education Ltd., 2003. – 1488 p.
9. Dictionary of Idioms. – Collins Cobuild, 1995. – 491p.
10. English Dictionary for Advanced Learners. – MACMILLAN, 2005. – 1692 p.
11. Essential English Dictionary. – Collins Cobuild, 1999. – 948 p.
12. Handy American Thesaurus. – Random House Roget's, 2001. – 372 p.
13. Language Activator. – Longman Group UK Ltd., 1997. – 1587 p.
14. NTC's American Idioms Dictionary. – NTC Publishing Group, 2000. – 625 p.
15. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English. – Oxford University Press, 2003. – 1539 p.
16. Oxford Dictionary of American English. – Oxford University Press, 2005. – 828 p.
17. Oxford Dictionary of Phrase, Saying and Quotation. – Oxford University Press, 2002. – 696 p.
18. Roget's 21st Century Thesaurus. – Random House, Inc., 1999. – 788 p.
19. The All Nations English Dictionary. – All Nations Literature, 1992. – 840 p.
20. Webster's Dictionary of American English. – Random House Inc., 1997. – 868 p.

Татьяна Анатольевна Гудкина,

руководитель Языкового центра «SpeakUp», г. Благовещенск

Алёна Александровна Литвинская,

преподаватель английского языка Языкового центра «SpeakUp», г. Благовещенск

Екатерина Петровна Нестерова,

*ведущий специалист Международного образовательного агентства «FLaTA-Center»,
г. Благовещенск*

Марина Андреевна Пирогова,

канд. филол. наук, доцент кафедры иностранных языков Амурского государственного университета

Between the Lines. Учебное пособие по домашнему чтению

Изд-во АмГУ. Усл. печ. л. 16